

MAI LAN HƯƠNG - HÀ THANH UYÊN

Ôn luyện TIẾNG ANH

CÓ ĐÁP ÁN

- ☆ Ôn thi học kỳ
- ☆ Ôn thi vào lớp 10

9



NHÀ XUẤT BẢN ĐÀ NẴNG
- 2018 -

MAI LAN HƯƠNG - HÀ THANH UYÊN

ÔN LUYỆN TIẾNG ANH 9
CÓ ĐÁP ÁN

Mục lục

PHẦN 1: NGỮ PHÁP CĂN BẢN	
TENSES (Thì)	
CLAUSES AFTER WISH (Mệnh đề sau wish)	
PASSIVE VOICE (Dạng bị động)	
REPORTED SPEECH (Lời nói gián tiếp)	
TAG QUESTIONS (Câu hỏi đuôi)	
VERB FORMS (Dạng của động từ)	
CONDITIONAL SENTENCES (Câu điều kiện)	
RELATIVE CLAUSES (Mệnh đề quan hệ)	
COMPARISON (So sánh)	
MODALS (Động từ tình thái)	
ADVERB CLAUSES (Mệnh đề trạng ngữ)	
SUBJECT - VERB AGREEMENT (Sự tương hợp giữa chủ ngữ và động từ)	
PREPOSITIONS (Giới từ)	
CONNECTIVES (Từ nối)	
PHẦN 2: ĐỀ ÔN TẬP	
25 đề ôn tập thi học kỳ và thi vào lớp 10	
Một số đề thi tuyển sinh vào lớp 10	
Đáp án	

TENSES

Thì

I. Present simple (Hiện tại đơn)

Positive	Subject + verb (bare-infinitive)/ verb-s/es
Negative	Subject + do not (don't)/ does not (doesn't) + verb (bare-inf.)
Question	Do/ Does + subject + verb (bare-inf.)...?

Thì hiện tại đơn được dùng để diễn đạt:

a. Một sự thật hiển nhiên, chân lý.

Ex: Water **freezes** at 0°C.

The sun **rises** in the East.

b. Hành động lặp đi lặp lại (thói quen), cảm giác, nhận thức, tình trạng ở hiện tại.

Ex: We **play** table tennis every Thursday.

Matthew **loves** sport.

Do you know Tania Smith?

My brother **lives** near Dover.

➤ Chúng ta thường dùng thì hiện tại đơn với các trạng từ và cụm trạng từ: *always, often, frequently, usually, generally, regularly, normally, sometimes, occasionally, seldom, rarely, every day/ week/ month/ year, all the time*, v.v.

c. Sự việc tương lai xảy ra theo thời gian biểu, chương trình hoặc kế hoạch được sắp xếp theo lịch trình.

Ex: His train **arrives** at 7:30.

School **starts** on 5 September.

II. Present progressive (Hiện tại tiếp diễn)

Positive	Subject + am / is / are + verb-ing
Negative	Subject + am not/ is not (isn't)/ are not (aren't) + verb-ing
Question	Am / Is / Are + subject + verb-ing...?

Thì hiện tại tiếp diễn được dùng để diễn đạt:

a. Hành động, sự việc đang diễn ra ngay lúc nói.

Ex: Look - the train **is coming**.

The children **are playing** in the garden now.

b. Hành động, sự việc mang tính tạm thời.

Ex: I **am living** with some friends until I find a place of my own.

c. Hành động đang diễn ra ở hiện tại nhưng không nhất thiết ngay lúc nói.

Ex: I **am writing** a book at present.

➤ Chúng ta thường dùng thì hiện tại tiếp diễn với các trạng từ hoặc trạng ngữ: *now, at present, at/ for the moment, right now, at this time*.

d. Sự việc xảy ra trong tương lai gần - một sự sắp xếp hoặc một kế hoạch đã định.

Ex: We **are coming** to see our grandfather tomorrow.

e. Sự việc thường xuyên xảy ra gây bức mình, khó chịu cho người nói.

Thường dùng với các từ *always, continually, constantly*.

Ex: She **is always complaining** about her work.

🔑 **Lưu ý:** Không dùng thì hiện tại tiếp diễn với các động từ trạng thái (stative verbs): *know, believe, understand, belong, need, hate, love, like, want, hear, see, smell, sound, have, wish, seem, taste, own, remember, forget,...* . Dùng thì hiện tại đơn với các động từ này.

Ex: The soup **tastes** salty. [~~NOT The soup is tasting salty.~~]

EXERCISE 1

Put the verb in the present simple or the present progressive.

1. He (live) _____ in the French Alps near the Swiss border.
2. At present they (live) _____ in a very small flat.
3. You can't see Tom now. He (have) _____ a bath.
4. They (like) _____ film but they (not/ go) _____ to the cinema very often.
5. He (not jog) _____ this week because it's too hot outdoors.
6. Paul (have) _____ a doughnut for breakfast every day.
7. Look! The sun (shine) _____ really bright today.
8. The sun always (rise) _____ behind those hills.
9. He usually (drink) _____ coffee but today he (drink) _____ tea.
10. Sandra is tired. She (want) _____ to go home now.
11. What _____ you (do) _____ now? ~ I (watch) _____ TV.
12. Wait a moment. I (listen) _____ to the news.
13. They (always/ come) _____ here to borrow something.
14. What _____ Susan (do) _____ in the evenings? ~ She often (watch) _____ TV and sometimes she (listen) _____ to music.
15. Listen! Somebody (shout) _____. ~ It's Jack. He (continually/ shout) _____ at his children.
16. Angela regularly (take) _____ the bus to school.
17. The kettle (boil) _____. Shall I make tea?
18. Water (boil) _____ at 100 degrees centigrade.
19. I (stay) _____ with my grandmother while my mother goes away.
20. We (celebrate) _____ Halloween every year on October 31.

III. Past simple (Quá khứ đơn)

Positive	Subject + was/ were + verb-ing
Negative	Subject + was not (wasn't)/ were not (weren't) + verb-ing
Question	Was/Were + subject + verb-ing...?

Thì quá khứ đơn được dùng để diễn đạt:

a. Hành động đã xảy ra và chấm dứt trong quá khứ, biết rõ thời gian.

Ex: I **bought** a new car three days ago.

b. Thói quen, cảm giác, sở thích, nhận thức ở quá khứ.

Ex: I **played** football very often when I was younger.

c. Hành động, sự việc đã xảy ra suốt một khoảng thời gian trong quá khứ, nhưng nay đã hoàn toàn chấm dứt.

Ex: Mozart **wrote** more than 600 pieces of music.

John **lived** in Paris for three years, but now he lives in New York.

d. Hai hoặc nhiều hành động, sự việc xảy ra liên tiếp trong quá khứ.

Ex: When we **saw** Tom last night, we **stopped** the car.

Yesterday morning, John **got** up at 6.30, **had** breakfast, and then **went** to school at 7 o'clock.

➤ Chúng ta thường dùng thì quá khứ đơn với các từ, cụm từ chỉ thời gian: *ago, yesterday, yesterday morning/ afternoon/ evening, last night/ week/ month/ year, the other day.*

IV. Past progressive (Quá khứ tiếp diễn)

Positive	Subject + was/ were + verb-ing
Negative	Subject + was not (wasn't)/ were not (weren't) + verb-ing
Question	Was/Were + subject + verb-ing...?

Thì quá khứ tiếp diễn được dùng để diễn đạt:

a. Hành động, sự việc đang diễn ra tại một thời điểm cụ thể trong quá khứ.

Ex: At 8 o'clock last night I **was reading** a book.

b. Hành động, sự việc xảy ra và kéo dài liên tục trong một khoảng thời gian ở quá khứ.

Ex: The sun **was shining** all day yesterday.

We **were staying** in the country from June to August last year.

c. Hành động, sự việc đang diễn ra trong quá khứ thì có một hành động, sự việc khác xảy đến (dùng thì quá khứ tiếp diễn cho hành động kéo dài và thì quá khứ đơn cho hành động xảy đến).

Ex: When John **was walking** to school yesterday, he met Judy.

d. Hai hoặc nhiều hành động, sự việc xảy ra đồng thời tại một thời điểm xác định trong quá khứ.

Ex: At breakfast yesterday I **was doing** my homework while my dad **was reading** a newspaper.

e. Sự việc đã xảy ra thường xuyên trong quá khứ gây bức mình, phiền toái.

Ex: She **was always** boasting about her work when she worked here.

EXERCISE 2

Fill in the blank spaces with the past simple or the past progressive of the verb in brackets.

1. The children (visit) _____ their grandparents last Sunday.
2. Alex (make) _____ model aeroplanes from 4pm to midnight yesterday.
3. While I (go) to school, I (meet) _____ my friend, Kate.
4. Last night, while Jane (wash) _____ dishes, her brother (sweep) _____ the dinning room.
5. My grandfather (plant) _____ those trees over fifty years ago.
6. When I (be) _____ a child, I always (kick) _____ my ball through the windows.
7. At 12 o'clock yesterday we (lie) _____ on the beach.
8. Alex (wake) _____ up late yesterday and (miss) _____ the bus.
9. They (watch) _____ TV when the earthquake (begin) _____.
10. I was very tired yesterday because I (work) _____ hard all day.

11. Christ often (go) _____ fishing last summer.
12. As Ann (clean) _____ her room, she (find) _____ her lost earring.
13. When I (drop) _____ my cup, the coffee (spill) _____ on my shirt.
14. At this time last year we (work) _____ in Saudi Arabia. We (live) _____ there for five years before moving to England.
15. When I (study) _____ at university, I (read) _____ a lot of books.
16. Miss Brown (teach) _____ us last week because our teacher was ill.
17. He (teach) _____ at Harvard University in 1985.
18. My sister (always/ ask) _____ silly questions when she was a child.
19. My sister and I (watch) _____ the cartoons on TV every Saturday last year.
20. I (run) _____ to class when I (fall) _____ down the stairs.

V. Present perfect simple (Hiện tại hoàn thành đơn)

Positive	Subject + have/ has + verb (past participle)
Negative	Subject + have not (haven't)/ has not (hasn't) + verb (p.p)
Question	Have/ Has + subject + verb (p.p) ...?

Thì hiện tại hoàn thành được dùng để diễn đạt:

a. Hành động vừa mới xảy ra.

Ex: We **have** just **come** back from Hawaii.

b. Hành động đã xảy ra trong quá khứ khi người nói không biết rõ hoặc không muốn đề cập đến thời gian chính xác (thời gian không quan trọng).

Ex: I **have** already **bought** this CD.

c. Hành động, sự việc đã xảy ra trong suốt một khoảng thời gian cho đến hiện tại, hoặc đã xảy ra nhiều lần trong quá khứ và còn có thể được lặp lại ở hiện tại hoặc tương lai.

Ex: Alex **has written** four novels so far.

We **have been** to America three times this year.

d. Hành động, sự việc xảy ra trong quá khứ còn kéo dài hoặc có ảnh hưởng đến hiện tại hay tương lai.

Ex: I **have lived** in Vienna for two years. (I am still in Vienna now.)

He can't play tennis because he **has broken** his leg.

➤ Chúng ta thường dùng thì hiện tại hoàn thành với các trạng từ và cụm trạng từ: *just, recently, lately, already, never, ever, (not) yet, before, for + khoảng thời gian, since + mốc thời gian, so far, until now, up to now, up to present*, và trong mệnh đề sau *It's the first I second/ ... time...*

EXERCISE 3

Fill in the blank spaces with the past simple or the present perfect of the verb in brackets.

1. We (live) _____ here for over twenty years.
2. He (live) _____ in London for two years and then (go) _____ to Edinburgh.
3. My brother (write) _____ several plays so far. He (just/ finish) _____ his second tragedy.
4. Chopin (compose) _____ some of his music in Majorca.
5. Tom (not buy) _____ a new computer yet.

6. I (play) _____ football very often when I (be) _____ younger.
7. Angela (not see) _____ Christ since 1998.
8. He (lose) _____ his job last month and since then he (be) _____ out of work.
9. Mike (not go) _____ to the cinema with us last Saturday.
10. We (not meet) _____ Mark since he (leave) _____ the town five years ago.
11. I (never/ hear) _____ "The Who" playing, but I'd like to.
12. _____ you (finish) _____ that work yet?
13. He (already/ pack) _____ his suitcase.
14. _____ you (meet) _____ Jane recently?
15. I (meet) _____ my aunt two years ago.
16. _____ your father (ever/ fly) _____ a plane before?
17. We (eat) _____ in this restaurant several times.
18. _____ Jane (ride) _____ a horse last holiday?
19. It's the first time she (ride) _____ a horse.
20. She (play) _____ a lot of tennis since she (get) _____ her new tennis racket.

VI. Present perfect progressive (Hiện tại hoàn thành tiếp diễn)

Positive	Subject + have/ has + been + verb-ing
Negative	Subject + have/ has not + been + verb-ing
Question	Have/ Has + subject + been + verb-ing ... ?

Thì hiện tại hoàn thành tiếp diễn được dùng để diễn đạt:

a. Hành động, sự việc xảy ra trong quá khứ kéo dài liên tục đến hiện tại hoặc tương lai; nhấn mạnh tính liên tục, kéo dài của sự việc.

Ex: Jane **has been watching** TV all evening.

I've been learning Italian for six years and I still can't speak it properly!

* Thì hiện tại hoàn thành đơn nhấn mạnh tính hoàn tất của sự việc.

Ex: I haven't learned very much Italian yet.

b. Hành động, sự việc vừa mới chấm dứt và có kết quả ở hiện tại.

Ex: I must go and wash. I've been gardening.

↳ **Lưu ý:** Không dùng thì hiện tại hoàn thành tiếp diễn với các động từ trạng thái (stative verbs). Dùng thì hiện tại hoàn thành đơn với các động từ này.

Ex: I've known her for a long time. [NOT ~~I've been knowing...~~]

EXERCISE 4

Fill in the blank spaces with the present perfect simple or the present perfect progressive of the verb in brackets. Sometimes both tenses are correct.

1. I (clean) _____ the house all day so I feel tired.
2. She (not buy) _____ any new clothes for years.
3. My hands are dirty because I (garden) _____.
4. We (wait) _____ for hours but she (not arrive) _____ yet.
5. Since Christmas she (write) _____ to me twice.

6. They (live) _____ in Ho Chi Minh City since 1970.
7. You can't talk to John because he (go) _____ out.
8. Mr. Robinson (teach) _____ in this school for fifteen years.
9. My hand is tired because I (write) _____ letters all morning.
10. They (see) _____ that film before so they don't want to see it again.
11. How long _____ you (know) _____ Mike? ~ I (know) _____ him since we were in secondary school.
12. They (build) _____ the house next door for months but it is not finished yet.
13. You (study) _____ for five straight hours. Why don't you take a break?
14. Mark (run) _____ very fast and is out of breath now.
15. He (play) _____ for the school team in 25 matches so far.

VII. Past perfect (Quá khứ hoàn thành)

Positive	Subject + had + verb (past participle)
Negative	Subject + had not (hadn't) + verb (p.p)
Question	Had + subject + verb (p.p)...?

Thì quá khứ hoàn thành được dùng để diễn đạt hành động xảy ra, kéo dài và hoàn tất trước một thời điểm xác định trong quá khứ, hoặc trước một hành động khác trong quá khứ (dùng thì quá khứ đơn cho sự việc xảy ra sau).

Ex: John **had finished** his work before lunch time.

When we **had finished** eating we **washed** the dishes.

EXERCISE 5

Fill in the blank spaces with the past simple or the past perfect of the verb in brackets.

1. Vicky (go) _____ out after she (do) _____ her homework.
2. Yesterday some little boys (ring) _____ the bell and (run) _____ away.
3. After the boys (break) _____ the window, they (run) _____ away.
4. We were good friends. We (know) _____ each other for years.
5. When I (arrive) _____ at the party, Lucy (already/ go) _____ home.
6. When I saw the girl I was sure I (meet) _____ her before.
7. I (not hear) _____ the news until I (read) _____ the newspaper.
8. When we (see) _____ Rachel, she (wave) _____ to US.
9. The light didn't work because someone (take) _____ the bulb.
10. The teacher (already/ give) _____ a quiz by the time I (get) _____ to class.

VIII. Simple Future (Tương lai đơn)

Positive	Subject + will + verb (bare-infinitive)
Negative	Subject + will not (won't) + verb (bare-inf.)
Question	Will 4- subject + verb (bare-inf.)...?

* Đôi khi trong lối nói trang trọng chúng ta dùng shall với chủ từ I và we. Thể phủ định của *shall* là *shall not (shan't)*.

Thì tương lai đơn được dùng để:

a. Diễn đạt hành động sẽ xảy ra trong tương lai hoặc hành động tương lai sẽ được lặp đi lặp lại. (Không dùng will để diễn đạt dự định hoặc kế hoạch.)

Ex: I **will be** at high school next year.

Penny **will cook** every night next month.

➤ Thường dùng với các trạng từ chỉ thời gian tương lai: *tomorrow, someday, next week/ month! year/..., soon.*

b. Đưa ra lời hứa, lời đe dọa, lời đề nghị, lời mời, lời yêu cầu.

Ex: Mom, I'**ll be** good. I'**ll do** my homework every day.

I'**ll send** you out if you keep talking.

I'**ll open** the door for you.

Will you **come** to my party on Saturday?

Will you **send** this letter for me, please?

Shall I...? Shall we...? thường được dùng để đưa ra lời đề nghị hoặc gợi ý.

Ex: **Shall I** send you the book?

Shall we go out for dinner?

c. Diễn đạt ý kiến, sự chắc chắn, sự dự đoán về điều gì đó trong tương lai, thường được dùng sau các động từ: be sure, know, suppose, think.

Ex: I think you'**ll enjoy** the party tomorrow.

d. Đưa ra quyết định tức thì - quyết định ngay lúc đang nói. (Không dùng will để diễn đạt quyết định sẵn có hoặc dự định).

Ex: There's someone at the door. ~ OK. I'**ll answer** it.

IX. Be going to

Positive	Subject + am/ is/ are + going to + verb (bare-inf.)
Negative	Subject + am/ is/ are not + going to + verb (bare-inf.)
Question	Am/ Is/ Are + subject + going to + verb (bare-inf.)

Be going to được dùng để diễn đạt:

a. Dự định sẽ được thực hiện trong tương lai gần, hoặc một quyết định sẵn có.

Ex: I **am going to visit** my aunt next week. (I am planing this.)

b. Dự đoán dựa trên cơ sở hoặc tình huống hiện tại - dựa vào những gì chúng ta nhìn thấy hoặc nghe thấy.

Ex: Look out! You'**re going to fall**.

Charles **is going to have** an accident if he drives like that.

👉 Lưu ý:

- Không dùng be going to với các động từ chỉ trạng thái (stative verbs).

Ex: You **will** understand me one day. [NOT You ~~going to understand~~...]

- Thì hiện tại tiếp diễn thường được dùng với động từ **go, come**.

Ex: Ann **is going** to Tokyo next week, (*rather than* Ann is going to go...)

Are you **coming** home for dinner? (*rather than* Are you going to come...)

- Không dùng will hoặc be going to trong mệnh đề thời gian. Dùng thì hiện tại đơn với nghĩa tương lai.

Ex: We'll see him when he **comes**. [NOT ~~...when he will come~~]

EXERCISE 6

Use the present simple, the present progressive, be going to or will with the verb in brackets.

1. We (go) _____ to the theater tonight. We've got tickets.
2. Mum, I promise I (keep) _____ my room clean.
3. We (tidy) _____ our house next Sunday.
4. I'm sure Matthew (feel) _____ better tomorrow.
5. What _____ you (do) _____ tomorrow evening? ~ Nothing. I'm free.
6. Do you think Sarah (pass) _____ the exam?
7. Sally (leave) _____ her job. She told me last week.
8. Look at that rain. I (lend) _____ you my umbrella.
9. There's a good film on TV tonight. I (watch) _____ it.
10. It's her birthday. She (have) _____ meal with her friends tonight.
11. I think it (rain) _____. Look at those black clouds.
12. Would you like tea or coffee? ~ I (have) _____ coffee, please.
13. They (buy) _____ Alex a computer game for his birthday.
14. Probably Ann (drive) _____ to the party by herself.
15. These shoes are very well-made. They (last) _____ a long time.
16. The train (arrive) _____ in London at 8.15 in the morning.
17. We (fly) _____ to New York at the beginning of September.
18. Her grandmother (be) _____ ninety next week.
19. The summer term (start) _____ on April 10th.
20. Look out! We (crash) _____!

EXERCISE 7

Fill in the blank spaces with the correct form of the verb in brackets.

1. I (make) _____ a cake when the light went out.
2. Ann usually (do) _____ the shopping, but I (do) _____ it today as she isn't well.
3. The plane (leave) _____ at 8.15 next Thursday.
4. I just opened the letter when the wind (blow) _____ it out of my hand.
5. Where's Paul? ~ In the kitchen. He (cook) _____ something.
6. Peter (break) _____ his leg in a skiing accident last year.
7. How long _____ you (wear) _____ glasses?
8. She (not speak) _____ to me since the last meeting.
9. The weather tomorrow (be) _____ warm and sunny.
10. My best friend (come) _____ to stay with me next weekend.
11. Look out! That dog (bite) _____ you. He's very angry.
12. As soon as he (see) _____ me, he (wave) _____.

13. I didn't like him - he (continually/ borrow) _____ money.
14. While Peter (watch) _____ the football match last night his sister (repair) _____ her bike.
15. He (work) _____ as a cashier for twenty years before his retirement.
16. My father (work) _____ for the company for years.
17. I only (hear) _____ from him twice since he (go) _____ away.
18. We (walk) _____ to school when we (see) _____ the accident.
19. My parents (live) _____ in London. They (live) _____ there all their lives.
20. We (go) _____ to the movie tonight. The film (begin) _____ at 7:30.
21. When he (return) _____ tomorrow, I (give) _____ him the keys.
22. It (be) _____ three years since I last (see) _____ you.
23. _____ you (ever/ go) _____ to the zoo? ~ Yes, my father often (take) _____ me to the zoo when I was a child.
24. Oh no! We're too late. The train (already/ leave) _____.
25. The phone is ring. ~ OK. I (answer) _____ it.

X. Used to

Positive	Subject + used to + verb (bare-inf.)
Negative	Subject + did not (didn't) + use to + verb (bare-inf.)
Question	Did + subject + use to + verb (bare-inf.)

Used to được dùng để diễn đạt một tình trạng, một thói quen hoặc một hành động xảy ra thường xuyên trong quá khứ mà nay không còn nữa.

Ex: We **used to live** in a small village, but now we live in a city.

My father **didn't use to drink** tea, but now he likes it.

Did you use to watch TV a lot when you were little?

♦ **Be used to** + verb-ing/ noun: quen với

♦ **Get used to** + verb-ing/ noun: trở nên quen với

Ex: I **am used to waking** up early.

Jane must **get used to getting** up early when she starts school.

👉 **Lưu ý:** Không dùng used to để diễn đạt sự việc đã xảy ra tại một thời điểm cụ thể trong quá khứ, sự việc xảy ra lặp đi lặp lại bao nhiêu lần hoặc trong thời gian bao lâu.

Ex: I **lived** in Paris for three years. [NOT I ~~used to live~~...]

EXERCISE 8

Fill in the blank spaces with used to or be! get used to (in the right tense) and the correct form of the verb in brackets.

1. I (live) _____ in Singapore when I was a child.
2. Greg (not/ like) _____ coffee, but now he does.
3. I hated life in the city at first, but then I (live) _____ there.
4. Those children (not/ get) _____ up early.
5. _____ (you/ play) baseball when you were in the USA?
6. I (not/ go) _____ swimming a lot because I couldn't swim.

7. I know English is hard, but you must (speak) _____ the language.
8. Helen (study) _____ hard at school but she doesn't anymore.
9. Mr. David (be) _____ a footballer when he was younger.
10. I (drive) _____ on the left because I've lived in London a long time.
11. That furniture shop (be) _____ a cinema.
12. I feel very full after the meal. I (not/ eat) _____ so much.
13. When we were children, we (go) _____ swimming very often.
14. Where _____ (people/ buy) food before the supermarket was built?
15. It was difficult at first, but Mike soon (drive) _____ on the left.

ĐÁP ÁN
PHẦN 1: NGỮ PHÁP CƠ BẢN

TENSES

Exercise 1

- | | |
|-------------------------|---|
| 1. lives | 11. are ... doing - am watching |
| 2. are living | 12. am listening |
| 3. is having | 13. are always coming |
| 4. like - don't go | 14. does ... do - watches - listens |
| 5. isn't jogging | 15. is shouting-is continually shouting |
| 6. has | 16. takes |
| 7. is shining | 17. is boiling |
| 8. rises | 18. boils |
| 9. drinks - is drinking | 19. am staying |
| 10. wants | 20. celebrate |

Exercise 2

- | | | |
|-------------------------------|--------------------------|------------------------|
| 1. visited | 8. woke - missed | 15. studied - read |
| 2. was making | 9. were watching - began | 16. was teaching |
| 3. was going - met | 10. was working | 17. taught |
| 4. was washing - was sweeping | 11. went | 18. was always asking |
| 5. planted | 12. was cleaning - found | 19. watched |
| 6. was - kicked | 13. dropped - spilled | 20. was running - fell |
| 7. were lying | 14. were working - lived | |

Exercise 3

- | | | |
|------------------------------------|------------------------|------------------------|
| 1. have lived | 8. lost - has been | 15. met |
| 2. lived – went | 9. didn't go | 16. Has ... ever flown |
| 3. has written - has just finished | 10. haven't met – left | 17. have eaten |
| 4. composed | 11. have never heard | 18. Did ... ride |
| 5. hasn't bought | 12. Have ... finished | 19. has ridden |
| 6. played - was | 13. has already packed | 20. has played - got |
| 7. hasn't seen | 14. Have ... met | |

Exercise 4

1. have been cleaning
2. hasn't bought
3. have been gardening
4. have been waiting/ have waited - hasn't arrived
5. has written
6. have been living/ have lived
7. has gone
8. has been teaching/ has taught

Exercise 5

1. went — had done
2. rang - ran
3. had broken - ran
4. had known
5. arrived - had already gone

Exercise 6

1. are going
2. will keep
3. are going to tidy/ are tidying
4. will feel
5. are ... going to do/ are ... doing
6. will pass
7. is going to leave
8. will lend
9. am going to watch
10. is going to have/ is having

Exercise 7

1. was making
2. does - am doing
3. leaves
4. blew
5. is cooking
6. broke
7. have ... been wearing/ have ... worn
8. hasn't spoken
9. will be
10. is coming
11. is going to bite
12. saw - waved
13. was continually borrowing

Exercise 8

1. used to live
2. didn't use to like
3. got used to living
4. aren't used to getting
5. Did you use to play
6. didn't use to go
7. get used to speaking
8. used to study

6. had met
7. hadn't heard - read
8. saw - waved
9. had taken
10. had already given - got

11. is going to rain
12. will have
13. are going to buy
14. will drive
15. will last
16. arrives
17. are flying/ are going to fly
18. will be
19. starts
20. are going to crash

14. was watching - was repairing
15. worked
16. has worked/ has been working
17. have heard - went
18. were walking - saw
19. live - have lived
20. are going - begins
21. returns - will give
22. is / has been - saw
23. Have ... ever gone - took
24. has already left
25. will answer

9. used to be
10. am used to driving
11. used to be
12. am not used to eating
13. used to go
14. did people use to buy
15. got used to driving

CLAUSES AFTER *WISH*

Mệnh đề sau *WISH*

Sau *wish* có 3 loại mệnh đề được dùng để chỉ sự ao ước ở tương lai, hiện tại và quá khứ.

1. Ao ước là tương lai (Future wish): mong điều gì đó sẽ, sẽ không hoặc ngừng xảy ra.

Subject + wish + subject + would/ could + verb (bare-inf.)

Ex: I wish you **would put** those shelves up soon.

It has been raining all day. I wish it **would stop** raining.

II. Ao ước ở hiện tại (Present wish): ước điều không thể xảy ra trong hiện tại

Subject + wish + subject + verb (past simple)

* Were có thể được dùng thay cho was.

Ex: I wish I **was/ were** rich, (but I'm poor now)

Tom wishes he **lived** in Paris, (but he doesn't)

I'm sorry I have to go. I wish I **could stay** longer, (but I can't)

III. Ao ước ở quá khứ (Past wish): ước điều gì đó đã hoặc đã không xảy ra trong quá khứ.

Subject + wish + subject + verb (past perfect)

Ex: I wish I **hadn't bought** that coat yesterday; I really don't like it.

🔗 **Lưu ý:** Cấu trúc *wish somebody something* được dùng để chúc - mong ai sẽ có được điều gì đó. Sau *wish* là 2 tân ngữ (object).

Ex: I wish you a Merry Christmas.

I saw Jim before the exam and he **wished me luck**.

EXERCISE 1

Rewrite the following using a wish construction

1. I'm sorry I haven't got a washing machine.
2. It's a pity I don't live near my work.
3. I'm sorry our garden doesn't get any sun.
4. I'm sorry I called him a liar.
5. It's a pity I don't know French.
6. I'm sorry I didn't book a seat.
7. I'm sorry I can't drive.
8. I'd like Tom to drive more slowly.
9. I'd like you to keep quiet.
10. It's a pity he didn't work harder during the term.
11. I'm sorry you aren't coming with US.
12. I'd like it to stop raining.
13. I'm sorry I can't swim.
14. I'd like you to wait for me.
15. I'm sorry I can't help you now.

EXERCISE 2

Put the verb into the correct form.

1. I wish I (know) _____ how to dance.
2. Jane wishes she (go) _____ to bed earlier last night.
3. I wish my friend (lend) _____ me his car for my date tomorrow night.
4. Jimmy wishes he (be) _____ old enough to drive a car.
5. I wish we (spend) _____ our last vacation in Hawaii.
6. I wish I (lie) _____ on the beach in Hawaii now.
7. It would be nice to stay here longer. I wish we (not have) _____ to leave now.
8. I'm fed up with this rain. I wish it (stop) _____.
9. Do you wish you (live) _____ near the sea?
10. Sarah wishes she (can speak) _____ every language in the world.
11. Khalid wishes he (visit) _____ Big Ben when he was in London.
12. We all wish our team (play) _____ better next time.
13. I wish I (can go) _____ to the moon for a vacation.
14. I wish you (not complain) _____ all the time.
15. I often wish I (be) _____ really wealthy.

ĐÁP ÁN
CLAUSES AFTER WISH

Exercise 1

- | | |
|--|-------------------------------------|
| 1. I wish I had a washing machine. | 11. I wish you were coming with us. |
| 2. I wish I lived near my work. | 12. I wish it would stop raining. |
| 3. I wish our garden got some sun. | 13. I wish I could swim. |
| 4. I wish I hadn't called him a liar. | 14. I wish you would wait for me. |
| 5. I wish I knew French. | 15. I wish I could help you now. |
| 6. I wish I had booked a seat. | |
| 7. I wish I could drive. | |
| 8. I wish Tom would drive more slowly. | |
| 9. I wish you would keep quiet. | |
| 10. I wish he had worked harder during the term. | |

Exercise 2

- | | |
|--------------------|-----------------------|
| 1. knew | 9. lived |
| 2. had gone | 10. could speak |
| 3. would lend | 11. had visited |
| 4. was/ were | 12. would play |
| 5. had spent | 13. could go |
| 6. was/ were lying | 14. wouldn't complain |
| 7. didn't have | 15. was/ were |
| 8. would stop | |

PASSIVE VOICE

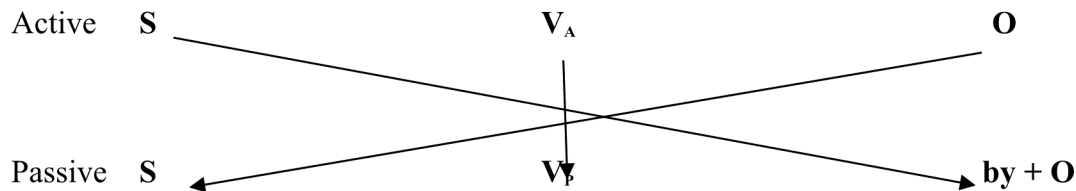
Dạng bị động

Câu bị động (passive sentence) là câu trong đó chủ ngữ là người hoặc vật nhận hoặc chịu tác động của hành động.

Ex: They built that house in 1999. (Active sentence)

That house **was built** in 1999. (Passive sentence)

★ Quy tắc chuyển đổi từ câu chủ động sang câu bị động



1. Tân ngữ chủ động (active object) → Chủ ngữ bị động (passive subject)

2. Động từ chủ động (active verb) → Động từ bị động (**be + past participle**)

Present simple → **am/ is/ are + past participle**

Present progressive → **am/ is/ are + being + past participle**

Past simple → **was/were + past participle**

Past progressive → **was/ were + being + past participle**

Present perfect → **have/ has + been + past participle**

Past perfect → **had + been + past participle**

Future simple → **will + be + past participle**

Be going to → **am/ is/ are going to + be + past participle**

Modal verbs → **can, should, must,... + be + past participle**

3. Chủ ngữ chủ động (active subject) → BY + tân ngữ bị động (passive object)

Ex: The teacher explains the lessons.

→ The lessons **are explained** by the teacher.

My mother is cooking the dinner.

→ The dinner **is being cooked** by my mother.

🔔 Lưu ý:

- Chủ từ *I, we, you, they, he, she, one, people, everyone, someone, no one, nobody* thường được bỏ. Với các chủ từ *no one, nobody*, đổi động từ khẳng định thành phủ định.

Ex: Someone read the story to the children.

→ The story **was read** to the children.

Nobody saw him leaving the room.

→ He **wasn't seen** leaving the room.

- Trạng từ chỉ nơi chốn + BY (agent) + Trạng từ chỉ thời gian

Ex: Jane should take the dog to the vet today.

→ The dog should be taken **to the vet** by Jane **today**.

- Trạng từ chỉ thể cách thường đứng giữa *be* và quá khứ phân từ. Các trạng từ khác thường đứng trước *be*.

Ex: The scientists have studied the problem **carefully**.

→ The problem has been carefully studied by the scientists.

Ann said that they had not yet analysed the result.

→ Ann said that the result had not **yet** been analysed.

★ Một số cấu trúc bị động đặc biệt

1. Động từ có hai tân ngữ (Verb with two objects)

Khi động từ chủ động có hai tân ngữ, tân ngữ trực tiếp (direct object) và tân ngữ gián tiếp (indirect object) thì cả hai tân ngữ đều có thể làm chủ ngữ cho câu bị động. Tuy nhiên tân ngữ chỉ người thường được dùng hơn.

Ex: They gave Vicky (LO) a book (D.O) for Christmas.

→ **Vicky** was given a book for Christmas.

→ **A book** was given to Vicky for Christmas.

2. Động từ chỉ giác quan (Verbs of perceptions: *see, notice, hear, look, watch,...*)

Active	S + V + O + bare-inf./ V-ing
Passive	S + be + past part. + to-inf./ V-ing

Ex: I saw him come out of the house.

→ He **was seen to come** out of the house.

They didn't notice her leaving the room.

→ She **wasn't noticed leaving the room**.

3. Động từ chỉ cảm xúc (Verbs of feelings: *like, love, hate, wish, prefer, hope, want...*)

Active	S + V + O + V-ing
Passive	S + V + O + to be + past part.

Ex: She likes US **to hand** our work in on time.

→ She likes our work **to be handed in** on time.

4. Động từ chỉ ý kiến (Verbs of opinions: *say, think, believe, report, know,...*)

Active	S + V (+ that) + clause (S ₂ + V ₂ + O ₂ ...)
Passive	It + be + V (past part.) (+ that) + clause (S ₂ + V ₂ + O ₂ ...) S ₂ + be + V (past part.) + to-infinitive/ to have + past part.

➤ Dùng *to-infinitive* khi hành động trong mệnh đề that xảy ra đồng thời hoặc xảy ra sau hành động trong mệnh đề chính; dùng *perfect infinitive* (to have + past participle) khi hành động trong mệnh đề that xảy ra trước hành động trong mệnh đề chính.

Ex: They believe (that) he is dangerous.

→ **It is believed** (that) he is dangerous.

→ **He is believed to be** dangerous.

People know (that) she was married.

→ **It is known** (that) she was married.

→ **She is known to have been** married.

5. Động từ *let, make, help*

Active	S + let/ make/ help + O + bare-infinitive
--------	---

Passive	S + be + made/ helped + to-infinitive
	S + be + let + bare-infinitive

Ex: They made him **tell** them everything.

→ He was made to tell them everything.

He let me **go** out. → I was let **go** out. / I **was allowed to go** out.

6. Thể sai khiến (Causative form)

Active	S + have + O ₁ (person) + V (bare-infinitive) + O ₂ (thing)
	S + get + O ₁ (person) + V (to-infinitive) + O ₂ (thing)
Passive	S + have/ get + O ₂ (thing) + V (past participle)

Ex: Paul has had his sister check his composition.

→ Paul has had his composition checked (by his sister).

I will get her to clean my room.

→ I will get my room cleaned.

EXERCISE 1

Put the sentences into the passive voice. Do not mention the agent unless it seems necessary.

1. It was blowing the leaves all over the pavement.
2. We are painting our house at the moment.
3. Does the hotel provide clean towels?
4. An ambulance took the sick man to hospital.
5. Visitors must leave umbrellas and sticks in the cloakroom.
6. They make these artificial flowers of silk.
7. You should pack such items carefully in tea chests.
8. Has someone posted the letters?
9. They used to start these engines by hand.
10. People speak Spanish differently in Spain and in Colombia.
11. The police will ask you several questions.
12. Why didn't they mend the roof before it fell in.
13. My little brother has drunk all the milk in the fridge.
14. Someone will serve refreshments soon.
15. We are going to hold our wedding feast in New World.
16. People are spending a lot of money on food now.
17. Jessica's friends gave her a present.
18. Nobody swept this street yesterday.
19. She was driving the children to school when the accident happened.
20. Someone has already told him the whole truth.

EXERCISE 2

Complete the second sentence so that it has the same meaning to the first one.

1. The lawyer gave him the details of his father's will.

The details _____.

2. He expected us to offer him the job.
He expected _____.
3. People know that he is armed.
He _____.
4. Someone saw him pick up the gun.
He _____.
5. Her husband offered her a bunch of flowers on her birthday.
She _____.
6. They has stopped the traffic going into the crowded streets.
The traffic _____.
7. Do you wish me to serve dinner now?
Do you wish dinner _____.
8. I prefer you to call me by my first name.
I prefer _____.
9. Why don't you get an optician to test your eyes?
Why don't you get your eyes _____.
10. They made the children do a lot of housework.
The children _____.
11. We heard him shouting at his children.
He _____.
12. People believe that he was killed by terrorists.
He _____.
13. You don't need to wind this watch.
This watch _____.
14. David is going to have the dentist fill his tooth.
David is going to have his tooth _____.
15. People say that she is a talented actress.
She _____.
16. They suggested making the tests easier. (Use should)
They suggested that _____.
17. We never heard him say Thank you' in his life.
He _____.
18. Nobody has used this room for ages.
This room _____.
19. My brother helped me do my homework.
I _____.
20. He likes people to call him by his first name.
He likes _____.

EXERCISE 3

Put the correct form or tense of the verb in brackets.

1. Paper (make) _____ in China centuries ago.
2. Three tests (take) _____ since last month.
3. The Statue of Liberty (visit) _____ by millions of people each year.
4. The bridge over the river (paint) _____ at the moment.
5. You (give) _____ a present when you go to the party next Saturday.
6. Medicine (must/ keep) _____ out of the reach of children.
7. While the furniture (move) _____, I went into the room.
8. When we got to the stadium we found that the game (cancel) _____.
9. A lot of trees (blow) _____ down in the storm last night.
10. The Reader (publish) _____ in Germany in 1995.
11. The Da Vinci Code (translate) _____ into 44 languages so far.
12. The lion is said (escape) _____ from its cage last night.
13. John must have his tooth (take) _____ out soon.
14. When are you going to get the roof (repair) _____?
15. We was made (wait) _____ for three hours at the airport.
16. Steve hates (keep) _____ waiting long.
17. She is said (be) _____ a woman of property.
18. Jane hopes her paintings (show) _____ at the National Gallery.
19. Mary has her car (wash) _____ every week.
20. He dislikes (tell) _____ what to do.

ĐÁP ÁN
PASSIVE VOICE

Exercise 1

1. The leaves were being blown all over the pavement.
2. Our house is being painted at the moment.
3. Are clean towels provided by the hotel?
4. The sick man was taken to hospital by an ambulance.
5. Umbrellas and sticks must be left in the cloakroom.
6. These artificial flowers are made of silk.
7. Such items should be carefully packed in tea chests.
8. Have the letters been posted?
9. These engines used to be started by hand.
10. Spanish is spoken differently in Spain and in Colombia.
11. You will be asked several questions by the police.
12. Why wasn't the roof mended before it fell in?
13. All the milk in the fridge has been drunk by my little brother.
14. Refreshments will be served soon.
15. Our wedding feast is going to be hold in New World.
16. A lot of money is being spent on food now.
17. Jessica was given a present by her friends./ A present was given to Jessica by her friends.
18. This street wasn't swept yesterday.
19. The children were being driven to school when the accident happened.
20. He has already been told the whole truth.

Exercise 2

1. The details of his father's will were given to him by the lawyer.
2. He expected to be offered the job.
3. He is known to be armed.
4. He was seen to pick up the gun.
5. She was offered a bunch of flowers by her husband on her birthday.
6. The traffic has been stopped going into the crowded streets.
7. Do you wish dinner to be served now?
8. I prefer to be called by my first name.
9. Why don't you get your eyes tested (by an optician)?
10. The children were made to do a lot of housework.
11. He was heard shouting at his children.
12. He is believed to have been killed by terrorists.
13. This watch doesn't need to be wound/ winding.
14. David is going to have his tooth filled by the dentist.
15. She is said to be a talented actress.
16. They suggested that the tests should be made easier.

17. He was never heard to say 'thank you' in his life.
18. This room hasn't been used for ages.
19. I was helped to do my homework by my brother.
20. He likes to be called by his first name.

Exercise 3

- | | |
|-------------------------|----------------------------|
| 1. was made | 4. is being painted |
| 2. have been taken | 5. will be given |
| 3. is visited | 6. must be kept |
| 7. was being moved | 14. repaired |
| 8. had been cancelled | 15. to wait |
| 9. were blown | 16. being kept/ to be kept |
| 10. was published | 17. to be |
| 11. has been translated | 18. to be shown |
| 12. to have escaped | 19. washed |
| 13. taken | 20. being told |

REPORTED SPEECH

Lời nói gián tiếp

Lời nói gián tiếp (reported speech) là lời tường thuật lại ý của người nói.

- Direct speech (lời nói trực tiếp): 'I am your friend,' said Tom.
- Reported Speech (*lời nói gián tiếp*): Tom said (that) he was my friend.

★ Cách đổi từ câu trực tiếp sang câu gián tiếp.

1. Câu trần thuật (Statements)

a. Động từ tường thuật (reporting verbs): Dùng *say* hoặc *tell*: *say (that), tell somebody (that)*. Động từ tường thuật thường ở quá khứ (*said, told*)

b. Đại từ (pronouns): Đổi các đại từ nhân xưng, đại từ hoặc tính từ sở hữu, đại từ phản thân sao cho tương ứng với chủ ngữ hoặc tân ngữ của mệnh đề chính.

c. Thì (tenses): Đổi thì của động từ thành thì quá khứ tương ứng.

present simple	→ past simple
present progressive	→ past progressive
present perfect	→ past perfect
present perfect progressive	→ past perfect progressive
past simple	→ past perfect
past progressive	→ past perfect progressive
past perfect	→ past perfect
past perfect progressive	→ past perfect progressive
will / shall / can / may	→ would / should / could / might
am/ is/ are going to	→ was/ were going to
must / have to	→ had to

Ex: 'I will come and see you soon,' said Mary.

Mary said (that) she **would come** and see us soon.

'I'm very happy,' Alex said to me.

Alex told me (that) he **was** very happy.

📌 Lưu ý:

- Chúng ta không đổi thì trong câu gián tiếp khi động từ giới thiệu ở thì hiện tại (*present simple, present progressive, present perfect*) hoặc tương lai đơn (*future simple*); câu dẫn trực tiếp là câu điều kiện không có thật (loại 2 và 3) hoặc mệnh đề giả định; câu trực tiếp diễn tả chân lý, sự thật hiển nhiên, thói quen (trong trường hợp này ta có thể chọn đổi hoặc không đổi thì trong câu gián tiếp).

Ex: John says 'I am coming.' → John says he is coming.

'If I was taller I would be a basketball player,' he said.

→ He said if he **was** taller he **would be** a basketball player.

'The earth is round,' said Galileo.

→ Galileo said the earth **is/ was** round.

- Không đổi các động từ tình thái *could, would, should, might, ought to, used to, had better*. *Must* có thể đổi thành *had to* hoặc giữ nguyên.

Ex: ‘Ann might ring today,’ he said. → He said Ann **might** ring that day.

- Thì quá khứ đơn và thì quá khứ tiếp diễn có thể giữ nguyên không đổi, với điều kiện là không gây nhầm lẫn về mối quan hệ thời gian của hành động (nhằm với hành động ở hiện tại).

Ex: ‘We came by car,’ they said. → They said they **came/ had come** by car.

Nhưng: ‘I lived in Brazil,’ Joe said. → Joe said he **had lived** in Brazil.

d. Tính từ, trạng từ / cụm trạng từ chỉ thời gian, nơi chốn

this / these	→ that / those
here	→ there
now	→ then
ago	→ before
at the moment	→ at that moment
today / tonight	→ that day / that night
tomorrow	→ the next day; the following day
yesterday	→ the day before; the previous day
next time	→ the following/ next time
next Sunday/ week/ month/ year	→ the following Sunday/ week/ month/year; the Sunday/ week/ month/ year after
last Sunday/ week/ month/ year	→ the previous Sunday/ week/ month/ year; the Sunday/ week / month/ year before

Ex: ‘**These** are my shoes,’ said Ann.

→ Ann said **those** were her shoes.

‘We saw that film yesterday,’ said Chris.

→ Chris said they had seen that film the day before.

2. Câu hỏi (questions)

a. Câu hỏi Yes - No (Yes - No question)

- Dùng các động từ tường thuật: ask, inquire, wonder, want to know.

- Dùng if hoặc whether sau động từ tường thuật.

- Đổi cấu trúc câu hỏi thành câu trần thuật.

- Đổi thì của động từ, đại từ, tính từ, trạng từ (giống cách đổi trong câu trần thuật).

Ex: ‘Does Harry like school?’ said Ms Brown.

→ Ms Brown asked **if/ whether Harry liked** school.

b. Câu hỏi Wh- (Wh-question)

- Dùng các động từ tường thuật: ask, inquire, wonder, want to know.

- Lặp lại từ để hỏi {what, where, when, why,...} sau động từ tường thuật.

- Đổi cấu trúc câu hỏi thành câu trần thuật.

- Đổi thì của động từ, đại từ, tính từ, trạng từ.

Ex: ‘Where do you live?’ said John to Sarah.

→ John asked Sarah **where she lived**.

3. Câu mệnh lệnh và câu yêu cầu, lời đề nghị, lời khuyên, lời hứa, v.v. (commands, requests, offers, advices, promises, ect.)

- Dùng động từ tường thuật *ask, tell, order, request, offer, advise, promise, v.v.* (động từ tường thuật phải phù hợp với loại câu). Ask thường được dùng để tường thuật câu yêu cầu (request) và tell được dùng để tường thuật câu mệnh lệnh (command).

- Đặt tân ngữ chỉ người nhận lệnh (nếu có) sau động từ tường thuật.

- Dùng dạng nguyên mẫu có to (to-infinitive) của động từ trong câu trực tiếp.

Ex: 'Don't talk!' said the teacher to us.

→ The teacher **told us not to talk**.

'Listen to me, please, everyone,' said Ms Miller.

→ Ms Miller **asked everyone to listen** to her.

➤ Suggest + verb-ing / that clause

Ex: 'Let's go to that new cafe,' said Ann.

→ Ann **suggested going** to that new cafe.

→ Ann **suggested (that) we go/ should go/ went** to that new cafe.

[NOT ~~Ann suggesting us to go to that new cafe.~~]

4. Câu cảm thán (Exclamation)

Câu cảm thán thường được thuật lại bằng động từ exclaim, say that.

Ex: 'What a beautiful house!'

→ She **exclaimed / said** (that) the house **was** beautiful.

5. Câu hỗn hợp (Mixed types)

Khi đổi câu hỗn hợp sang câu gián tiếp ta đổi theo từng phần, dùng động từ giới thiệu riêng cho từng phần.

Ex: Peter said, 'What time is it? I must go now.'

→ Peter asked what time it was and said that he had to go then.

EXERCISE 1

Put the following into reported speech.

1. I bought a new computer today,' said Clare.
2. 'Cleo will become a dentist next year,' said Adam.
3. 'The children are doing a test now,' said Ms Brown.
4. 'I understand what you're saying,' said Eve to Anne.
5. We were driving home at 9.00 last night,' said Irene.
6. 'Georgia has already heard this news,' said Barbara to Anthony.
7. 'We can go shopping tomorrow,' said Cathy.
8. 'Christine flew to Florida two days ago,' said Gerry.
9. 'I must work harder next year,' Thomas said.
10. 'The sun always rises in the east,' said our teacher.

EXERCISE 2

Write reported questions for these sentences.

1. 'Do you like doing gymnastics?' asked Adam.
2. 'Are you coming tomorrow?' said Bill to Sandra.
3. 'What country do you come from?' said Bill to Olga.

4. 'Have you seen the library?' asked Ann.
5. 'When will you come and see me again?' asked Sammy.
6. 'How long did you wait for the doctor?' Lisa asked Chris.
7. 'Can parents visit the school at any time?' Mr Jones asked.
8. 'Is New York the biggest city in America?' Nick asked his father.
9. 'How many students are there in your class, Mike?' asked Dora.
10. 'What are you going to study?' asked Ann.

EXERCISE 3

Write the reported speech for these commands or requests. Use the reporting verbs *tell* or *ask*.

1. 'Don't eat all that chocolate,' said Jenny to her sister.
2. 'Please lend me your pen for a moment,' I said to Mary.
3. 'Hide in here and be quiet,' said the policeman.
4. 'Don't throw your rubbish in the streets,' said our teacher.
5. 'Please help me across the road,' said the old lady.
6. 'Don't drink any milk today,' said the doctor to Jenny.
7. 'Get out of my way,' he said.
8. 'Please pay at the desk,' said the assistant to the customer.
9. 'Don't lie on my bed,' said my brother.
10. 'Open your bag, please,' said the store detective to the girl.

EXERCISE 4

Put the following into reported speech. Use the past tense of the reporting verbs in brackets.

1. 'Would you like to have lunch with me on Sunday?' he said to me. (invite)
2. 'Would you like a cup of tea?' Jane said to John, (offer)
3. 'Will you help me, please?' she said to me. (ask)
4. 'If I were you I wouldn't buy that coat,' Angela said (advise)
5. 'Why don't we discuss it over a coffee?' Tom said (suggest)
6. 'I'll lend you some money,' Debbie said (promise)
7. 'Remember to switch off the lights,' my mother said (remind)
8. 'Take these letters to the post, will you?' said the boss to his secretary (tell)
9. 'Don't touch that wire, Mary!' I said (warn)
10. 'Would you mind moving your car?' he said (ask)

EXERCISE 5

Put the following into reported speech.

1. 'I knew Don twenty years ago,' said Peter.
2. 'Carmen hasn't been here recently,' said Iris to Marian.
3. 'Are you going to visit your aunt tomorrow?' asked Basil.
4. 'Listen to me and don't make a noise,' said Mr Robinson to his students.
5. 'Where are you going for your holiday?' Martha asked us.

6. 'I'm tired of eating fish this summer,' said Mary to Helen.
7. 'Please make your beds every morning,' said Mrs Brown to her children.
8. 'What shall we do to improve the situation?' asked Julia.
9. 'Shall we go out for dinner?' John said.
10. 'I can't see you now because I'll be at work.' said Jane to Tom.
11. 'Are these shoes too small for you?' the assistant asked Helen.
12. 'Must you go to the doctor now?' Paul asked his sister.
13. 'Would you like to go to the circus next Saturday, Bill?' asked Nancy.
14. 'Don't sit on the table,' said Mum to Johnny.
15. 'There isn't much rain in the south of the country.' said Harry.
16. 'If it rains this afternoon it will be too wet to play the match,' they said.
17. 'Ann got her licence last Tuesday,' he said.
18. 'If I had any money I'd buy you a drink,' Jane said.
19. 'Who teaches you Spanish, Greg?' Vicky asked.
20. 'Should I put the cupboard here?' Martha asked.

ĐÁP ÁN

REPORTED SPEECH

Exercise 1

1. Clare said (that) she bought/ had bought a new computer that day.
2. Adam said (that) Cleo would become a dentist the following year.
3. Ms Brown said (that) the children were doing the test then.
4. Eve told Anne (that) she understood what Anne was saying.
5. Irene said (that) they were driving/ had been driving home at 9.00 the night before.
6. Barbara told Anthony (that) Georgia had already heard that news.
7. Cathy said (that) they could go shopping the next day/ the following day.
8. Gerry said (that) Christine flew/ had flown to Florida two days before.
9. Thomas said (that) he must work harder the following year.
10. Our teacher said (that) the sun always rises/ rose in the east.

Exercise 2

1. Adam asked if/ whether I liked doing gymnastics.
2. Bill asked Sandra if/ whether she was coming the next day/ the following day.
3. Bill asked Olga what country she came from.
4. Ann asked if/ whether I had seen the library.
5. Sammy asked when I would come and see him again.
6. Lisa asked Chris how long he waited/ had waited for the doctor.
7. Mr Jones asked if/ whether parents could visit the school at any time.
8. Nick asked his father if/ whether New York was the biggest city in America.
9. Dora asked Mike how many students there were in his class.
10. Ann asked what I was going to study.

Exercise 3

1. Jenny told her sister not to eat all that chocolate.
2. I asked Mary to lend me her pen for a moment.
3. The policeman told me to hide in there and to be quiet.
4. Our teacher told us not to throw our rubbish in the streets.
5. The old lady asked me to help her across the road.
6. The doctor told Jenny not to drink any milk that day.
7. He told me to get out of his way.
8. The assistant asked the customer to pay at the desk.
9. My brother told me not to lie on his bed.
10. The store detective asked the girl to open her bag.

Exercise 4

1. He invited me to have lunch with him on Sunday.
2. Jane offered John a cup of tea.
3. She asked me to help her.
4. Angela advised me not to buy that coat.

5. Tom suggested discussing it over a coffee./ Tom suggested (that) we should discuss it over a coffee.
6. Debbie promised to lend me some money./ Debbie promised (that) he would lend me some money.
7. My mother reminded me to switch off the lights.
8. The boss told his secretary to take those letters to the post.
9. I warned Mary not to touch that wire.
10. He asked me to move my car./ He asked me if I would mind moving my car

Exercise 5

1. Peter said (that) he knew/ had known Don twenty years before.
2. Iris told Marian (that) Carmen hadn't been there recently.
3. Basil asked if/ whether I was going to visit my aunt the following day.
4. Mr Robinson told his students to listen to him and not to make a noise.
5. Martha asked us where we were going for our holiday.
6. Mary told Helen (that) she was tired of eating fish that summer.
7. Mrs Brown asked her children to make their beds every morning.
8. Julia asked what they should do to improve the situation.
9. John suggested going out for dinner./ John suggested (that) we should go out for dinner.
10. Jane told Tom (that) she couldn't see him then because she would be at work.
11. The assistant asked Helen if/ whether those shoes were too small for her.
12. Paul asked his sister if/ whether she must/ had to go to the doctor then.
13. Nancy invited Bill to go to the circus the Saturday after./ Nancy asked Bill if he would like to go to the circus the Saturday after.
14. Mum told Johnny not to sit on the table.
15. Harry said (that) there isn't/ wasn't much rain in the south of the country.
16. They said (that) if it rained that afternoon it would be too wet to play the match.
17. He said Ann got/ had got her licence the Tuesday before.
18. Jane said if she had any money she would buy me a drink.
19. Vicky asked Greg who taught him Spanish.
20. Martha asked if she should put the cupboard there.

TAG QUESTIONS

Câu hỏi đuôi

Câu hỏi đuôi (tag questions) là câu hỏi ngắn được thêm vào cuối câu trần thuật (statements). Câu hỏi đuôi được thành lập bằng một trợ động từ hoặc động từ to be và một đại từ nhân xưng (chỉ chủ ngữ của câu).

to be / auxiliary verb (+ not) + personal pronoun

♦ Câu trần thuật khẳng định + câu hỏi đuôi phủ định (Positive statement + negative question tag)

Ex: It **is** cold, **isn't it**?

♦ Câu trần thuật phủ định + câu hỏi đuôi khẳng định (Negative statement + positive question tag)

Ex: It **isn't** cold, **is it**?

- Nếu câu trần thuật có trợ động từ (hoặc động từ be) thì động từ này được lặp lại trong câu hỏi đuôi.

Ex: Sally **can** speak French, **can't she**?

You **haven't** lived here long, **have you**?

- Nếu câu trần thuật không có trợ động từ, dùng trợ động từ do trong câu hỏi đuôi.

Ex: You like oysters, **don't you**?

Henry gave you a watch, **didn't he**?

- Câu hỏi đuôi khẳng định được dùng sau câu có các từ phủ định: *no, nothing, nobody, never, seldom, rarely, hardly, scarcely, little*.

Ex: You've never been to Australia, **have you**? [NOT ...haven't you?]

★ Một số trường hợp đặc biệt

- Câu hỏi đuôi của *I am* là **aren't I?** (= *am I not*)

Ex: I'm late, **aren't I**?

- Câu hỏi đuôi sau câu mệnh lệnh khẳng định (affirmative imperatives) là *will you? would you? can you?* và *could you? Won't you?* có thể được dùng để mời ai làm điều gì một cách lịch sự.

Ex: Give me a hand, **will you**?

Sit down, **won't you**?

Sau câu mệnh lệnh phủ định (negative imperatives), dùng *will you?*

Ex: Don't tell anybody, **will you**?

- Sau *Let's...* (trong câu gợi ý, v.v), dùng *shall we?*

Ex: Let's have a party, **shall we**?

- *There* có thể làm chủ ngữ trong câu hỏi đuôi.

Ex: There's something wrong, **isn't there**?

- *It* được dùng thay cho *nothing* và *everything*. *They* được dùng thay cho *nobody*, *somebody* và *everybody*.

Ex: *Nothing* can happen, **can it**?

Somebody wanted a drink, **didn't they**?

- *It* được dùng thay cho *this/ that*. *They* được dùng thay cho *these! those*.

Ex: This is your pen, **isn't it**?

These **aren't** your books, **are they**?

★ **Cách trả lời câu hỏi đuôi:** Trả lời YES khi câu khẳng định đúng và NO khi câu phủ định đúng.

Ex: You're going today, aren't you? ~ **Yes**, I am. (= I am going today.)

She isn't your sister, is she? ~ **No**, she isn't. (= She isn't my sister.)

EXERCISE

Add tag questions.

1. Bill has breakfast at 7 o'clock, _____?
2. Ann will be at the meeting tomorrow, _____?
3. I am the best student, _____?
4. They caught lots of fish last summer, _____?
5. You haven't eaten dinner yet, _____?
6. Alex used to eat at home very often, _____?
7. There wasn't anyone there, _____?
8. Those aren't Jane's books, _____?
9. Bill is studying hard, _____?
10. You didn't go to Italy last year, _____?
11. Mary and Jane seldom see each other, _____?
12. Nobody liked the play, _____?
13. Don't forget to do your homework, _____?
14. Let's go out for dinner, _____?
15. It's hardly rained at all this summer, _____?
16. Everything is OK, _____?
17. Everyone can learn how to swim, _____?
18. The students have to wear uniforms at school, _____?
19. Your sister wouldn't like a puppy, _____?
20. That's the postman, _____?
21. Your grandparents live in Boston, _____?
22. She's never gone skiing, _____?
23. I should give her a ring, _____?
24. You won't tell anyone else, _____?
25. Wait here for a minute, _____?

ĐÁP ÁN
TAG QUESTIONS

1. doesn't he
2. won't she
3. aren't I
4. didn't they
5. have you
6. didn't he
7. was there
8. are they
9. isn't he
10. did you
11. do they
12. did they

13. will you
14. shall we
15. has it
16. isn't it
17. can't they
18. don't they
19. would she could you
20. isn't it
21. don't they
22. has she
23. shouldn't I
24. will you
25. will/ would/ can/

VERB FORMS

Hình thức động từ

I. Danh động từ (Gerund): Verb-ing

Danh động từ thường được dùng:

- Sau một số động từ và cụm động từ: *adore, admit, appreciate, avoid, can't help, cant stand, cant bear, can't face, consider, delay, deny, detest, discuss, dislike, enjoy, fancy, feel like, finish, forgive, give up, hate, imagine, involve, keep, like, love, loathe, mention, mind, miss, postpone, practice, prefer, recall, recollect, report, resent, resist, risk, suggest, tolerate.*

Ex: Greg really **loves watching** TV.

He's **finished mending** the car.

- Sau giới từ.

Ex: Lisa congratulated Bob **on passing** the test.

I'm looking forward **to seeing** you again.

- Sau các cụm từ: *be busy, it's no good/ use, it's a waste of time, there's no point in, it's (not) worth.*

Ex: She is **busy practising** the piano.

It's **worth reading** that book. It's great.

- Sau các động từ *catch, discover, feel, find, hear, notice, see, watch* + tân ngữ → chỉ hành động đang tiếp diễn.

Ex: I **saw him crossing** the road.

- Sau các động từ *dislike, imagine, involve, keep, mind, prevent, remember, risk, spend, stop, waste* + tân ngữ.

Ex: Children nowadays **spend too much time watching** TV.

II. Động từ nguyên mẫu có to (to-infinitive)

Động từ nguyên mẫu có to thường được dùng:

- Sau một số động từ: *afford, agree, arrange, appear, ask, attempt, care, choose, claim, dare, decide, demand, expect, fail, happen, hesitate, hope, intend, learn, manage, neglect, offer, plan, prepare, pretend, promise, propose, refuse, seem, swear, tend, threaten, vow, want, wish, would like! love! prefer, urge.*

Ex: He **decided to stay** and see what would happen.

We **are planing to go** abroad this year.

- Sau tân ngữ của các động từ: *advise, allow, ask, (can't) bear, beg, cause, command, compel, encourage, expect, find, forbid, force, get, guess, hate, help, instruct, intend, invite, leave, like, love, mean, need, oblige, observe, order, permit, prefer, persuade, recommend, remind, request, suspect, teach, tell, tempt, urge, want, warn, wish.*

Ex: I didn't **ask you to pay** for the meal.

My doctor **advised me to go** on holiday.

- Sau các tính từ diễn tả cảm xúc, phản ứng (*glad, happy, delighted, pleased, anxious, surprised, shocked, afraid,...*) và một số các tính từ thông dụng (*right, wrong, certain, able, likely, easy, difficult, hard, good, kind, ready,...*).

Ex: We're **happy to be** here.

We were **right to start** early.

- Sau *enough* và *too*.

Ex: The apples were ripe **enough to pick**.

The box was too heavy **to lift**.

- Sau các nghi vấn từ trong lời nói gián tiếp (ngoại trừ *why*).

Ex: Tell us **what to do**.

- Để diễn đạt mục đích.

Ex: He went to the United States **to learn** English.

III. Động từ nguyên mẫu không to (bare-infinitive)

Động từ nguyên mẫu không to được dùng:

- Sau các trợ động từ tình thái (modal verbs: *will, shall, would, should, can, could, may, might, must, have to*).

Ex: I **must go** now.

- Sau các động từ tri giác *see, hear, feel, watch, notice* + tân ngữ → chỉ hành động hoàn tất.

Ex: I didn't **see him come** in. (*But: He wasn't seen to come* in.)

- Sau *make, let, help* + tân ngữ.

Ex: They **made me repeat** the whole story.

(*But: I was made to repeat* the whole story.)

My father let me drive his car.

Sau *help* + tân ngữ có thể là một động từ nguyên mẫu có *to* hoặc không *to*.

Ex: He **helped me move/ to move** the cupboard.

- Sau các cụm động từ *had better, would rather, had sooner* và sau *why* hoặc *why not*.

Ex: I **would rather go** alone.

You're looking tired. **Why not take** a holiday?

★ Danh động từ, động từ nguyên mẫu có to hoặc động từ nguyên mẫu không to (gerund, to infinitive, or bare infinitive)

◆ *see, hear, feel, ...* + object +

{	bare-infinitive: chỉ sự hoàn tất của hành động
	verb-ing: chỉ sự tiếp diễn của hành động

Ex: I once **heard Brendel play** all the Beethoven concertos.

As I passed his house I **heard him playing** the piano.

◆ *forget / remember* +

{	to-infinitive: quên / nhớ làm việc gì đó
	verb-ing: quên đi / nhớ lại việc gì đó đã xảy ra

Ex: **Remember to invite** her to the party.

I **remember calling** him yesterday.

{
to-infinitive: lấy làm tiếc khi phải báo tin xấu cho ai đó

♦ *regret* +

verb-ing: hối tiếc về điều gì đó đã xảy ra trong quá khứ

Ex: I **regret to tell** you that you failed the test.

I **regret lending** him some money. He never paid me back.

♦ *stop* + *finish*

to-infinitive: ngừng lại để làm việc gì

verb-ing: ngừng làm việc gì

Ex: We **stopped to buy** a newspaper.

Sally **stopped talking** and sat down.

♦ *try* +

to-infinitive: chỉ sự nỗ lực (cố gắng)

verb-ing: chỉ sự thử nghiệm (thử)

Ex: She **tried her best to solve** the problem.

John isn't here. **Try phoning** his home number.

♦ *mean* +

to-infinitive: chỉ dự định hoặc ý định

verb-ing: chỉ sự liên quan hoặc kết quả

Ex: I don't think she **means to get** married for the moment.

If you want to pass the exam it will **mean studying** hard.

♦ *go on* +

to-infinitive: chỉ sự thay đổi của hành động

verb-ing: chỉ sự liên tục của hành động

Ex: She **stopped talking and went on to read** her novel.

He said nothing but just **went on working**.

♦ *need* +

to-infinitive: (nghĩa chủ động)

verb-ing: (nghĩa bị động)

Ex: You **need to clean** that sofa again.

That sofa **needs cleaning** again. (= need to be cleaned)

♦ advise, recommend, allow, permit, encourage, require +

verb-ing

object + to-inf.

Ex: We don't **allow smoking** in our house.

We don't **allow people to smoke** in our house.

But: People **aren't allowed to smoke** in our house.

♦ *begin, start, like, love, hate, intend, continue, cannot I could not bear* có thể được theo sau bởi động từ nguyên mẫu hoặc danh động từ mà không có sự khác nhau về nghĩa.

Ex: She **began playing/ to play** the guitar when she was six.

I intend **telling/ to tell** her what I think.

EXERCISE 1

Fill in the blank spaces with the gerund, infinitive with to or infinitive without to of the verb in brackets.

1. John was surprised (get) _____ Ann's letter.
2. Eve isn't interested in (teach) _____ young children.
3. The sea wasn't warm enough (swim) _____ in.
4. Our teacher let us (talk) _____ for the last ten minutes of the lesson.
5. I enjoy (talk) _____ to intelligent people.
6. I think you waste too much time (watch) _____ television.
7. Matthew denied (steal) _____ the money.
8. I'd rather (read) _____ a true story than a silly love story.
9. My father has finished (mend) _____ the car.
10. Our teacher made me (answer) _____ all the questions.
11. It's worth (go) _____ to see that new film.
12. Archie is too fat (climb) _____ the tall tree.
13. David refused (eat) _____ all his potatoes.
14. Jane decided (tell) _____ George everything.
15. We are looking forward to (read) _____ your new book.
16. Would you like (go) _____ to Cindy's house next Saturday?
17. Would you mind (shut) _____ the window? I hate (sit) _____ in a draught.
18. I can't bear (do) _____ homework on Saturdays.
19. It's no use (take) _____ the exam if you haven't studied.
20. If you can't (remember) _____ his number you'd better (look) _____ it up.
21. Why do you keep (ask) _____ me the same question over and over again?
22. I wish you would consider (accept) _____ my proposal.
23. Janet intends (fix) _____ her bicycle herself.
24. Will you help me (move) _____ the bookcase?
25. I love (walk) _____ on the beach during a light rain.

EXERCISE 2

Choose and circle the correct verb.

1. I must remember *inviting / to invite* George to my party.
2. Henry tried *eating / to eat* salt with his apple but it tasted horrible.
3. I regret *telling / to tell* you that I won't be able to come. Maybe next time.
4. Joe forgot *locking / to lock* the door last night.
5. They stopped *singing / to sing* to listen the news broadcast.
6. That house looks awful. It needs *painting / to paint*.
7. They don't allow *parking / to park* in front of the building.
8. Stella remembered *meeting / to meet* Fay at the lift because they were both late.
9. Ann tried *climbing / to climb* the tree but she couldn't.

10. As I was going home, I stopped *having / to have* a look in a shop window.
11. You'll never regret *doing / to do* a kind action.
12. Sorry - I didn't mean *interrupting / to interrupt* you.
13. I'll never forget *meeting / to meet* the Queen.
14. I'm in a difficult position. What do you advise me *doing / to do*?
15. I saw Mary *crossing / cross* the road and disappearing I disappear into the post office.
16. Please go on *writing / to write*, I don't mind *waiting / to wait*.
17. I need a change. I need *going / to go* away for a while.
18. She stopped *talking / to talk* about that and went on *describing / to describe* her other problem.
19. I looked out of the window and saw Dan *riding / ride* his bike along the road.
20. I heard the bomb *exploding / explode*.
21. Can you smell something *burning / burn*?
22. As I passed his house I heard him *practising / practise* the piano.
23. Dad allowed Dora *going / to go* to the party.
24. We listened to the old man *saying / say* his story from the beginning to end.
25. The doctor advised Carmen *taking / to take* more exercise.

EXERCISE 3

Put the verbs in brackets into the correct form.

1. Don't forget (lock) _____ the door before (go) _____ to bed.
2. I tried (explain) _____ but he refused (listen) _____ and went on (complain) _____.
3. Your windows need (clean) _____; would you like me (do) _____ them for you?
4. He heard the clock (strike) _____ six and knew that it was time for him (get) _____ up.
5. After walking for three hours we stopped (let) _____ the others (catch) _____ up with us.
6. His doctor advised him (give up) _____ (jog) _____.
7. I didn't feel like (work) _____ so I suggested (spend) _____ the day in the garden.
8. Most people prefer (spend) _____ money to (earn) _____ it.
9. Do you remember (read) _____ about it? ~ No, at that time I was too young (read) _____ newspaper.
10. Please stop (cry) _____. I hate (see) _____ a woman (cry) _____.
11. I catch him (climb) _____ over my wall. I asked him (explain) _____ but he refused (say) _____ anything.
12. Do you expect (pass) _____ this course? If so, you'd better (work) _____ harder.
13. You don't need (ask) _____ his permission every time you want (leave) _____ the room.
14. Before he let us (go) _____ he made us (promise) _____ (not tell) _____ anybody what happened.
15. Try (avoid) _____ (be) _____ late. He hates being kept (wait) _____.

16. We considered (drive) _____ to New York, but at last we decided (fly) _____.
17. They agreed (spend) _____ \$10,000 (rebuild) _____ the hall.
18. I don't mind (stay) _____ home, but I'd rather (go) _____ out tonight.
19. They begin (encourage) _____ younger people (quit) _____ (smoke) _____.
20. After (play) _____ with his toys for about half an hour, the boy started (cry) _____ loudly.

ĐÁP ÁN VERB FORMS

Exercise 1

- | | |
|--------------|--------------------------------|
| 1. to get | 14. to tell |
| 2. teaching | 15. reading |
| 3. to swim | 16. to go |
| 4. talk | 17. shutting - sitting/ to sit |
| 5. talking | 18. doing |
| 6. watching | 19. taking |
| 7. stealing | 20. remember - look |
| 8. read | 21. asking |
| 9. mending | 22. accepting |
| 10. answer | 23. to fix |
| 11. going | 24. move/ to move |
| 12. to climb | 25. walking/ to walk |
| 13. to eat | |

Exercise 2

- | | | |
|--------------|-----------------------|---------------------------|
| 1. to invite | 9. to climb | 17. to go |
| 2. eating | 10. to have | 18. talking - to describe |
| 3. to tell | 11. doing | 19. riding |
| 4. to clock | 12. to interrupt | 20. explode |
| 5. singing | 13. meeting | 21. burning |
| 6. painting | 14. to do | 22. practising |
| 7. parking | 15. cross – disappear | 23. to go |
| 8. meeting | 16. writing – waiting | 24. say |
| | | 25. to take |

Exercise 3

- | | |
|---|---|
| 1. lock – going | 11. climbing - to explain - to say |
| 2. to explain - to listen – complaining | 12. to pass - work |
| 3. cleaning - to do | 13. to ask - to leave |
| 4. strike - to get | 14. go - promise - not to tell |
| 5. to let – catch | 15. to avoid being - waiting |
| 6. to give up – jogging | 16. driving - to fly |
| 7. working – spending | 17. to spend - rebuilding |
| 8. spending – earning | 18. staying - go |
| 9. reading - to read | 19. to encourage/ encouraging - to quit - smoking |
| 10. crying - seeing/ to see – crying | 20. playing - to cry/ crying |

CONDITIONAL SENTENCES

Câu điều kiện

Câu điều kiện gồm có hai mệnh đề: mệnh đề *if* (*if*-clause) chỉ điều kiện và mệnh đề chính (main clause) chỉ kết quả. Có ba loại câu điều kiện:

I. Điều kiện có thật (real condition): tình huống có thể xảy ra trong hiện tại hoặc tương lai.

If Clause	Main Clause
Present tenses (present simple, progressive, or perfect)	will + verb (bare-inf.) Present simple

Ex: If Dennis **has** enough money, he **will go** to Paris.

- Thì hiện tại đơn (present simple) thường được dùng trong mệnh đề chính để diễn đạt một sự thật hiển nhiên, một quy luật hoặc một thói quen.

Ex: If you **heat** ice, it **melts**.

- Thì hiện tại tiếp diễn được dùng để diễn đạt sự tiếp diễn của hành động và thì hiện tại hoàn thành được dùng để diễn đạt sự hoàn tất.

Ex: If the baby **is sleeping**, don't make noise.

If she **has studied** hard, she **will pass** the test.

- *Can, may, might, should, ought to, have to, must, be going to,...* cũng có thể được dùng trong mệnh đề chính.

Ex: If it **rains** tomorrow, I'm **going to** stay home.

II. Điều kiện không có thật ở hiện tại (unreal condition in the present): tình huống tưởng tượng; hành động trông có thật hoặc không thể xảy ra trong hiện tại hoặc tương lai.

If Clause	Main Clause
Past simple	would / should/ could / might + verb (bare inf.)

* *Were* có thể được dùng thay cho *was* (với *I, he, she, it*).

Ex: If they **had** enough money, they **would buy** a bigger house.

(but they don't have much money)

If this room **was/ were** tidy, I **could find** things.

(but the room isn't tidy)

If I **were** you, I **wouldn't take** that job.

III. Điều kiện không có thật ở quá khứ (unreal condition in the past): sự việc không có thật trong quá khứ; hành động chưa bao giờ xảy ra trong quá khứ.

If Clause	Main Clause
Past perfect (had + past participle)	would / should / could / might + have + verb (past participle.)

Ex: If I **had seen** you, I **would have said** hello.

(but I didn't see you)

If the weather **hadn't been** so bad, we **could have gone** out.

(but the weather was very bad)

👉 Lưu ý:

- Không dùng will, would trong mệnh đề điều kiện (if-clause).

Ex: If they **go** to the mountains next week, they will be able to ski.

[NOT-If they ~~will go~~ to the mountains next week,...]

- Có thể dùng kết hợp điều kiện loại 2 và loại 3.

Ex: If I **hadn't stayed** up late last night I **wouldn't be** so tired now.

If I **knew** you were coming I **would have baked** a cake.

★ Những cách khác để diễn đạt điều kiện

1. **Unless** = if ... not (nếu ... không)

Ex: I'll take the job **unless** the pay is too low.

[= I'll take the job **if** the pay **isn't** too low.]

2. **Without / But for** + noun (nếu ... không; nếu không có)

Ex: **Without / But for** your help, I would not overcome the trouble.

[= If you did not help me, I would not overcome the trouble.]

3. **Should / Were / Had** + subject + verb

Ex: **Should you change** your mind, phone me. [= If you should change...]

Were you in my position, what would you do? [= If you were...]

Had I not gone to the party last night, I wouldn't be tired now.

[= If I hadn't gone to the party...]

[NOT ~~Hadn't I gone~~ to the party]

4. **Imagine (that), suppose/ supposing (that), provided/ providing (that), as/ so long as, on condition (that), or/ otherwise, only if, in case,...**

Ex: You can borrow my bike provided (that) you ride it carefully.

EXERCISE 1

Fill in the blank spaces with the correct tense of the verb in brackets (future and present conditional sentences).

1. If you (see) _____ Ann tomorrow, can you ask her to phone me?
2. If I were you, I (not get) _____ angry about it.
3. If I find your watch, I (phone) _____ you at once.
4. Unless I have a quiet room I (not be able) _____ to do any work.
5. If I (know) _____ how to use a computer I could get a better job.
6. If you could change one thing in the world, what you (change) _____?
7. If it rains in the desert, flowers (come) _____ out in a few hours.
8. If Jenny (be) _____ more friendly, she would have more friends.
9. If you (go) _____ to England next month, you must drive on the left.
10. If you (finish) _____ with your dictionary I'd like to borrow it.
11. Someone (steal) _____ your car if you leave it unlock.
12. If Nick (study) _____ more, he would get better grades.
13. You feel cold if the sun (not shine) _____.
14. If you don't do your homework, I (not let) _____ you watch TV.
15. The room (be) _____ more brighter if you painted the walls white.

16. Would you do that if you (be) _____ me?
17. Were I an astronaut, I (go) _____ to the moon.
18. If he (work) _____ hard today can he have a holiday tomorrow?
19. Ice (turn) _____ to water if you heat it.
20. Should John call, please (tell) _____ him call back later.

EXERCISE 2

Fill in the blank spaces with the correct tense of the verb in brackets (future, present and past conditional sentences).

1. You (catch) _____ the train if you (leave) _____ earlier last night.
2. I (dance) _____ with Ken if he (come) _____ to my party next Sunday.
3. If Vicky (be) _____ older, she (be) _____ able to drive a car.
4. If the wind (be) _____ strong enough, we (go) _____ sailing, but I'm not sure.
5. I (travel) _____ around the world if I (win) _____ a million dollars.
6. _____ you (study) _____ Engineering if you (be) _____ me?
7. The film was terrible! If I (know) _____ it was so bad, I (not go) _____ to see it.
8. If Greg (get) _____ up earlier, he (not be) _____ late for school, but he'll never change!
9. If I (wait) _____ longer last night I (see) _____ you.
10. I think BMW cars are great. If I (have) _____ enough money, I (buy) _____ one.
11. We (not have) _____ enough food to eat tomorrow unless you (cook) _____ some more now.
12. Maybe it will rain tomorrow. If it (rain) _____ tomorrow we (not have) _____ a picnic.
13. This is the fire bell. If you (ring) _____ that bell, the fire brigade (come) _____.
14. He speaks too fast. I (understand) _____ him better if he (speak) _____ more slowly.
15. If I (realize) _____ that the traffic lights were red I (stop) _____.
16. In winter you (feel) _____ cold if the sun (not shine) _____.
17. It's a pity John isn't taller. If he (be) _____ taller, he (be) _____ a great basketball player.
18. If I (not be) _____ busy tonight, I (help) _____ you with your homework.
19. What _____ you (do) _____ if you (win) _____ the lottery last week?
20. Sue enjoys her work. She (not do) _____ it if she (not enjoy) _____ it.

ĐÁP ÁN
CONDITIONAL SENTENCES

Exercise 1

- | | | |
|---------------------|-------------------|---------------|
| 1. see | 8. was/ were | 15. would be |
| 2. wouldn't get | 9. Go | 16. was/ were |
| 3. will phone | 10. have finished | 17. would go |
| 4. am not able | 11. will steal | 18. works |
| 5. knew | 12. studied | 19. turns |
| 6. would ... change | 13. doesn't shine | 20. tell |
| 7. come | 14. won't let | |

Exercise 2

- | | |
|--|---------------------------------------|
| 1. could/ would have caught - had left | 11. won't have - cook |
| 2. will dance – comes | 12. rains - won't have |
| 3. was/ were - would be | 13. ring - comes |
| 4. is - may/ might go | 14. would/ could understand - spoke |
| 5. would travel — won | 15. had realized - would have stopped |
| 6. Would ... study - was/ were | 16. feel - doesn't shine |
| 7. had known - wouldn't have gone | 17. was/ were - would be |
| 8. got - wouldn't be | 18. am not - will help |
| 9. had waited - would have seen | 19. would ... have done - had won |
| 10. had - would buy | 20. wouldn't do - didn't enjoy |

RELATIVE CLAUSES

Mệnh đề quan hệ

I. Mệnh đề quan hệ xác định (defining relative clause): cung cấp những thông tin quan trọng cần thiết để xác định danh từ hoặc cụm danh từ đứng trước.

	Chủ ngữ (<i>subject</i>)	Tân ngữ (<i>object</i>)	Sở hữu (<i>possessive</i>)
Chỉ người (<i>for people</i>)	who / that	who / whom / that	Whose
Chỉ vật (<i>for things</i>)	which / that	which / that	whose / of which

Ex: The woman is friendly. She lives next to me.

→ The woman **who / that** lives next to me is friendly.

The man told me to come back today. I saw him yesterday.

→ The man **who(m) / that** I saw yesterday told me to come back today.

The man called the police. His car was stolen.

→ The man **whose car** was stolen called the police.

The bus goes to the airport. It runs every half hour.

→ The bus **which / that** goes to the airport runs every half hour.

The car broke down. I bought it last month.

→ The car **which / that** I bought last month broke down.

We passed shops. Their windows were beautifully decorated.

→ We passed shops **whose windows** were beautifully decorated.

→ We passed shops **the windows of which** were beautifully decorated.

📌 Lưu ý:

- *That* luôn được dùng sau cụm danh từ gồm cả người lẫn vật, sau các đại từ *all, every (thing), some(thing), any(thing), no(thing), little, few, much, none, only* và sau dạng so sánh nhất (superlatives).

Ex: I saw a girl and her cat **that** were sitting on the grass.

It's the best film **that** has ever been made about madness.

- Có thể bỏ các đại từ quan hệ làm tân ngữ *who(m), which, that*.

Ex: The man I saw yesterday told me to come back today.

The car I bought last month broke down.

II. Mệnh đề quan hệ không xác định (non-defining relative clause): cung cấp thêm thông tin về một người, một vật hoặc một sự việc đã được xác định. Mệnh đề quan hệ không xác định cách mệnh đề chính bằng dấu phẩy (,) hay dấu gạch ngang (-).

	Chủ ngữ (<i>subject</i>)	Tân ngữ (<i>object</i>)	Sở hữu (<i>possessive</i>)
Chỉ người (<i>for people</i>)	who / that	who / whom / that	Whose
Chỉ vật (<i>for things</i>)	which / that	which / that	whose / of which

* Không dùng **that** trong mệnh đề quan hệ không xác định.

Ex: My neighbors are very friendly. They live in next flat.

→ My neighbors, **who** live in next flat, are very friendly.
 This morning I met Chris. I hadn't seen him for ages.
 → This morning I met Chris, **who(m)** I hadn't seen for ages.
 Sheila is away from home a lot. Her job involves a lot of travelling.
 → Sheila, **whose job** involves a lot of travelling, is away from home a lot.
 My new flat has a terrific view. It is on the tenth floor.
 → My new flat, **which** is on the tenth floor, has a terrific view.
 We stayed at the Park Hotel. Anne had recommended it.
 → We stayed at the Park Hotel, **which** Anne had recommended.
 I'm looking for my cat. Her hair is tricoloured.
 → I'm looking for my cat, **whose** hair is tricoloured.

🔗 **Lưu ý:** Không được bỏ các đại từ quan hệ làm tân ngữ trong mệnh đề quan hệ không xác định.

Ex: This morning I met Chris, **who(m)** I hadn't seen for ages.
 [NOT ~~This morning I met Chris, I hadn't seen for age~~]

➤ **Which =s the fact that...**: được dùng để chỉ cả câu.

Ex: David helped me clear up. That was very kind of him.
 → David helped me clear up, **which** was very kind of him.
 [which = the fact that he helped me clear up]

III. Trạng từ quan hệ: **when, where, why**

♦ **When** (= on / at / in which): chỉ thời gian

Ex: I'll never forget the day. I met you *then* (on that day).
 → I'll never forget the day **when** (= on which) I met you.

♦ **Where** (= at / in / from / on which): chỉ nơi chốn

Ex: The building is very old. He lives *there* (in that building).
 → The building **where** (= in which) he lives is very old.

♦ **Why** (= for which): chỉ lý do

Ex: The reason why (= for which) I'm phoning you is to ask your advice.

🔗 **Lưu ý:**

- Trong mệnh đề quan hệ xác định, trạng từ quan hệ **when, why** có thể được thay bằng **that** hoặc bỏ đi. Nếu không dùng **where** thì phải có giới từ trong mệnh đề quan hệ.

Ex: I'll never forget the day (that) I met you.

The reason (that) I'm phoning you is to ask your advice.

The building (that / which) he lives **in** is very old.

- Không được bỏ trạng từ quan hệ trong mệnh đề quan hệ không xác định.

Ex: She has just come back from a holiday in Crete, **where** we went last year.

IV. Giới từ trong mệnh đề quan hệ

Khi đại từ quan hệ làm tân ngữ của giới từ (prepositional objects), giới từ thường có hai vị trí: trước đại từ quan hệ *whom, which* hoặc sau động từ (trừ *without*). Không dùng *who* và *that* ngay sau giới từ.

Ex: That's the man **about whom** I was talking. [NOT ~~about who / that...~~]

Or: That's the man (who/ whom/ that) I was talking **about**.

Was that the restaurant **to which** you normally go? [NOT ~~to-that...~~]

Or: Was that the restaurant (which / that) you normally go **to**?

Mr Lee, **to whom** I spoke at the meeting, is very interesting.

Or: Mr Lee, **who** I spoke **to** at the meeting, is very interesting.

🔗 **Lưu ý:**

- Khi giới từ là thành phần của cụm động từ (look after, look forward to, put up with,...) thì không thể đem giới từ ra trước whom, which.

Ex: The machine which I have **looked after** for ten years is still working perfectly.

[NOT ~~The machine after which I have looked for ten years...~~]

- Giới từ without không đứng sau động từ.

Ex: Fortunately we had a map **without which** we would have got lost.

[NOT ~~...a map which we would have got lost without~~]

V. All, both, few, most, some, none ect. + of + whom / which

Ex: Mary has three brothers. All of them are married.

→ Mary has three brothers, **all of whom** are married.

Martin tried on three jackets. None of them fitted him.

→ Martin tried on three jackets, **none of which** fitted him.

EXERCISE 1

In the spaces, write all the pronouns or adverbs possible to complete each sentence. Write Ø if the sentence is correct without adding a pronoun/ adverb.

1. The river _____ flows through the town is polluted.
2. The manager _____ fired Tom is a difficult person to work for.
3. The bus _____ I take to school very morning is usually very crowded.
4. Where are the people _____ you met at the cafe?
5. The person to _____ Ann spoke could not answer her question.
6. The people _____ house we visited were very hospitable.
7. The bat is the only mammal _____ can fly.
8. The motel in _____ we stayed was clean and comfortable.
9. I enjoyed the people _____ I talked to at the party.
10. This is the best hotel _____ I know.
11. Do you know the name of the person _____ the police are questioning?
12. Do you know a shop _____ I can find sandals?
13. Have you got anything _____ belongs to me?
14. Sunday is the only day _____ I can relax.
15. Do you know the reason _____ she doesn't like me?
16. He works for a company _____ make action movies.
17. I talked to the boy _____ kite was caught in a tree.
18. Basketball is a sport _____ I played at school.

19. He showed me the place _____ they work.
20. Summer is the time of year _____ the weather is the hottest.

EXERCISE 2

Fill in each blank with the pronouns or adverbs possible to complete each sentence.

1. We've invited Ann, _____ lives in the next flat.
2. She introduced me to her husband, _____ I hadn't met before.
3. Alex, _____ mother is in hospital, is absent from school.
4. That block, _____ cost £5 million to build, has been empty for years.
5. His house, for _____ he paid £10.000, is now worth £50.000.
6. These books, _____ you can get at any bookshop, will give you all the information you need.
7. His latest book, _____ name I've forgotten, is very famous.
8. I received two job offers, neither of _____ I accepted.
9. Her sons, both of _____ work abroad, ring her up every week.
10. The clock struck thirteen, _____ made everyone laugh.
11. Dorothy, _____ does my hair, has moved to Florida.
12. This is my friend from Canada, _____ I was telling you about.
13. Jane doesn't have a phone, _____ makes it difficult to contact her.
14. The Park Hotel, _____ we stayed last year, is very luxury.
15. Yesterday we visited the City Museum, _____ I'd never been to before.
16. This happened in 1959, _____ I was still a little boy.
17. My father, is in his seventies, _____ enjoys climbing mountains.
18. He played the violin all night, _____ annoyed the neighbors.
19. Mr Jones, for _____ I was working, was very considerate.
20. My parents' house, _____ I was born and grew up, was destroyed in an earthquake.

EXERCISE 3

Combine the following pairs or groups of sentences, using relative pronouns or adverbs.

1. The police officer was friendly. She gave me directions.
2. The woman gave me some information about the trip. I called her.
3. The information helped me a lot. I found it on the Internet.
4. Paris is an exciting city. It is the capital of France.
5. We are studying sentences. They contain adjective clauses.
6. The man was standing over there. I was telling you about him.
7. I know a man. His last name is Goose.
8. The city was beautiful. We spent our vacation there.
9. 1989 is the year. We moved to New York then.
10. Mr Lee teaches Chemistry. We met him yesterday.
11. Matthew applied for the job. He can speak four languages.
12. Rice is a staple food throughout much of the world. It is grown in many countries.
13. We enjoyed Mexico City. We spent our vacation there.

14. My friend is now a personnel manager of a company. Her first job was a secretary.
15. I saw several houses. Most of them were quite unsuitable.
16. The firm is sending me to New York. I work for this firm.
17. This is Mrs Jones. Her son won the championship last year.
18. I met Mary. She asked me to give you this.
19. We'll have to pass the entrance exam. This will be difficult.
20. That company has ten employees. All of them are computer experts.
21. Where are the students? We went to their party last week.
22. Valencia is a great place. Valencia is due east of Madrid.
23. The Rodonda square is near the cathedral. They hold a market in the Rodonda square every Sunday.
24. Sally has found a new job. That is lucky.
25. These are the friends. I met them on my trip to Hawaii.

ĐÁP ÁN RELATIVE CLAUSES

Exercise 1

- | | | |
|-----------------------|------------------------|--------------------|
| 1. which/ that | 8. which | 15. why/ that/ Ø |
| 2. who/ that | 9. who/ whom/ that/ Ø | 16. which/ that |
| 3. which/ that/ Ø | 10. that/ Ø | 17. whose |
| 4. who/ whom/ that/ Ø | 11. who/ whom/ that/ Ø | 18. which/ that/ 0 |
| 5. whom | 12. where | 19. where |
| 6. whose | 13. that | 20. when/ that/ Ø |
| 7. which/ that | 14. when/ that/ Ø | |

Exercise 2

- | | | | |
|--------------|-----------|---------------|-----------|
| 1. who | 6. which | 11. who | 16. when |
| 2. who/ whom | 7. whose | 12. who/ whom | 17. who |
| 3. whose | 8. which | 13. which | 18. which |
| 4. which | 9. whom | 14. where | 19. whom |
| 5. which | 10. which | 15. which | 20. Where |

Exercise 3

1. The police officer who/ that gave me directions was friendly.
2. The woman (who/ whom/ that) I called gave me some information about the trip.
3. The information (which/ that) I found on the Internet helped me a lot.
4. Paris, which is the capital of France, is an exciting city.
5. We are studying sentences which/ that contain adjective clauses.
6. The man (who/ whom/ that) I was telling you about was standing over there. / The man about whom I was telling you was standing ...
7. I know a man whose last name is Goose.
8. The city where we spent our vacation was beautiful.
9. 1989 is the year (when/ that) we moved to New York.
10. Mr Lee, who/ whom we met yesterday, teaches Chemistry.
11. Matthew, who can speak four languages, applied for the job.
12. Rice, which is grown in many countries, is a staple food throughout much of the world.
13. We enjoyed Mexico, where we spent our vacation.
14. My friend, whose first job was a secretary, is now a personnel manager of a company.
15. I saw several houses, most of which were quite unsuitable.
16. The firm (which/ that) I work for is sending me to New York./ The firm for which I worked is...
17. This is Mrs Jones, whose son won the championship last year.
18. I met Mary, who asked me to give you this.
19. We'll have to pass the entrance exam, which will be difficult.
20. That company has ten employees, all of whom are computer experts.
21. Where are the students whose party we went last week?

22. Valencia, which is due east of Madrid, is a great place.
23. The Rodonda square, where they hold a market every Sunday, is near the cathedral.
24. Sally has found a new job, which is lucky.
25. These are the friends (who/ whom/ that) I met on my trip to Hawaii.

COMPARISON

So sánh

I. So sánh bằng (Equality)

as + adjective I adverb + as
not as/ so + adjective / adverb + as

Ex: John is **as tall as** Peter.

Jane speaks French **not as/ so well as** Alice.

- as much I many (+ noun) as được dùng để nói về số lượng.

Ex: I have not read **as many books as** my teacher advises me.

- Cấu trúc the same (+ noun) as cũng có thể được dùng để so sánh bằng hoặc nói về sự giống nhau.

Ex: My book is **the same as** yours.

Don is **the same height as** his older brother.

II. So sánh hơn (Comparative)

- Thêm **-er** vào sau tính từ/ trạng từ có một âm tiết (short adjective/ adverb) và tính từ có hai âm tiết tận cùng bằng *y, et, le, er, ow*.

- Thêm **more** vào trước tính từ/ trạng từ có hai âm tiết trở lên (long adjective/ adverb), ngoại trừ các tính từ tận cùng bằng *y, et, le, er, ow*.

short adjective / adverb + er + than
more + long adjective / adverb + than

Ex: George is **taller than** his brother.

Jane speaks French **more fluently than** Mary.

- Để so sánh ít hơn ta dùng *less*.

Ex: This picture is **less valuable than** that one.

- Với danh từ:

more / fewer + count noun + than
more / less + uncount noun + than

Ex: I have **more/ fewer books than** Peter does.

I have **more/ less free time than** I used to.

- Much, far, a lot được dùng để nhấn mạnh so sánh hơn.

Ex: Russian is **much/ far more difficult than** Spanish.

III. So sánh nhất (Superlative)

- Thêm **-est** vào sau tính từ/ trạng từ ngắn (short adjective/ adverb) và tính từ có hai âm tiết tận cùng bằng *y, et, le, er, ow*.

- Thêm **most** vào trước tính từ/ trạng từ dài (long adjective/ adverb).

the + short adjective / adverb + est
the most + long adjective I adverb

Ex: This is **the happiest** day of my life.

What is **the most interesting** book you've ever read?

- So sánh nhất được dùng khi so sánh từ ba đối tượng trở lên. Khi trong nhóm chỉ có hai đối tượng, ta thường dùng dạng so sánh hơn.

Ex: Of the two sisters, Jane is **the nicer**.

- Để so sánh ít nhất ta dùng (the) least.

Ex: The least expensive holidays are often the most interesting.

- Much, by far được dùng để nhấn mạnh so sánh nhất.

Ex: Amy is **the smartest by far**.

🔗 **Lưu ý:** Trong hình thức so sánh, tính từ ngắn đứng trước tính từ dài.

Ex: My car is **faster and more comfortable** than hers.

★ Hình thức so sánh bất quy tắc

good / well	→	better	→	the best
bad / badly	→	worse	→	the worst
many / much	→	more	→	the most
little	→	less	→	the least
far	→	farther / further	→	the farthest / the furthest

IV. So sánh kép (Double comparative)

1. So sánh lũy tiến (*càng ngày càng*)

short adj / adv + er + and + short adj / adv + er
more / less and more / less + long adj / adv

Ex: I'm getting fatter and fatter.

We're going more and more slowly.

He became less and less interested.

2. So sánh đồng tiến (*càng ... càng*)

the + comparative + s + V + the + comparative + S + V

Ex: **The older** I get, **the happier** I am.

The more comfortable it is, **the more** I like it.

- More, less có thể được dùng với danh từ trong cấu trúc này.

Ex: **The more money** he makes, **the more useless things** he buys.

EXERCISE 1

Using the given words, write the sentences with **as ... as**. Use a negative verb if appropriate.

1. a housefly and an ant (big)

An ant isn't as /so big as a housefly.

2. a lion and a tiger (dangerous and wild)

3. a lake and an ocean (big)

4. honey and sugar (sweet)

5. good health and money (important)

6. adults and children/ usually (patient)

7. a galaxy and a solar system (large)

8. monkeys and people (agile in climbing trees)

9. reading a novel and listening to music (relaxing)
10. an orange and a lemon (sour)

EXERCISE 2

Complete the sentences. Use a comparative (-er / more) or a superlative (-est / most).

1. Her jokes are always much _____ than mine, (funny)
2. Ann drives _____ than she used to. (carefully)
3. We stayed at _____ hotel in the town, (cheap)
4. Ron ran _____ than his friends did. (far)
5. David is _____ person I've ever known, (generous)
6. Costa Rica is one of _____ countries in the world, (beautiful)
7. Alaska is _____ state in the United States, (big)
8. Last night I went to bed _____ than usual, (early)
9. Pluto is _____ planet from the sun in our solar system, (far)
10. I know him _____ than anybody else knows him. (well)
11. I like living in the countryside. It's far _____ than living in a town, (simple)
12. Joe is _____ of the two students, (quiet)
13. That was _____ movie I've ever been to. (bad)
14. There were a lot of people on the bus. It was _____ than usual, (crowded)
15. You'll find your way around the town _____ if you have a good map. (easily)
16. It's a lot _____ to learn a foreign language in a country where it is spoken, (easy)
17. First Avenue is _____ than Highway 70. (narrow)
18. Henry and Dolores are careful, but Olga is _____ of the three, (careful)
19. Professor Larson's lectures are much _____ than professor Sato's, (confusing)
20. Jane is _____ athletic of all the three women, (little)

EXERCISE 3

Complete the sentences by repeating a comparative (... and...).

1. When I get excited, my heart beats _____. (fast)
2. Cathy got _____ in her job. In the end she left, (bored)
3. Since Ann went to Canada, her English has got _____. (good)
4. My bags seemed to get _____ as I carried them, (heavy)
5. The weather is getting _____ with each passing day. (warm)
6. Health care is becoming _____ nowadays, (expensive)
7. As I waited for my interview, I became _____. (nervous)
8. As the day went on, the weather got _____. (bad)
9. When you blow up a balloon, it gets _____. (big)
10. These days _____ people are learning English, (many)

EXERCISE 4

Combine each pair of sentences with double comparatives (the morel -er ... the morel -er).

1. The fruit is *fresh*. It tastes *good*.
2. We got *close* to the fire. We felt *warm*.

3. A knife is *sharp*. It is *easy* to cut something.
4. The test is *difficult*. We try *hard*.
5. The hotel is *expensive*. The service is *good*.
6. The party got *noisy*. I got *angry*.
7. She drove *fast*. I became *nervous*.
8. We ran *fast* to reach the house. The sky grew *dark*.
9. You use *a lot of* electricity. Your bill will be *high*.
10. I thought about the plan *much*. I liked it *little*.

ĐÁP ÁN COMPARISON

Exercise 1

1. An ant isn't as/ so big as a housefly.
2. A lion is as dangerous and wild as a tiger.
3. A lake isn't as/ so big as an ocean.
4. Honey is as sweet as sugar.
5. Money isn't as/ so important as good health.
6. Children aren't usually as/ so patient as adults.
7. A galaxy isn't as/ so large as a solar system.
8. People aren't as/ so agile in climbing trees as monkeys.
9. Reading a novel is as relaxing as listening to music.
10. An orange isn't as/ so sour as a lemon

Exercise 2

- | | | |
|-----------------------|---------------------------|----------------------|
| 1. funnier | 8. earlier | 15. more easily |
| 2. more carefully | 9. the farthest/ furthest | 16. easier |
| 3. the cheapest | 10. better | 17. narrower |
| 4. farther/ further | 11. simpler/ more simple | 18. the most careful |
| 5. the most generous | 12. the quieter | 19. more confusing |
| 6. the most beautiful | 13. the worst | 20. the least |
| 7. the biggest | 14. more crowded | |

Exercise 3

- | | | |
|------------------------|----------------------------|----------------------|
| 1. faster and faster | 5. warmer and warmer | 9. bigger and bigger |
| 2. more and more bored | 6. more and more | 10. more and more |
| 3. better and better | 7. expensive more and more | |
| 4. heavier and heavier | 8. nervous worse and worse | |

Exercise 4

1. The fresher the fruit is, the better it tastes.
2. The closer we got to the fire, the warmer we felt.
3. The sharper a knife is, the easier it is to cut something.
4. The more difficult the test is, the harder we try.
5. The more expensive the hotel is, the better the service is.
6. The noisier the party got, the angrier/ the more angry I got.
7. The faster she drove, the more nervous I became.
8. The darker the sky grew, the faster we ran to reach the house.
9. The more electricity you use, the higher your bill will be.
10. The more I thought about the plan, the less I liked it.

MODALS

Động từ tình thái

1. Can (có thể)

Can được dùng để diễn đạt:

- Khả năng ở hiện tại hoặc tương lai - nói người/ hoặc vật có thể (hoặc không thể) làm điều gì đó.

Ex: I **can** read Italian, but I **can't** speak it.

The machine **can** translate messages into 24 different languages.

I am confident a solution **can** be found.

- Sự xin phép và cho phép.

Ex: **Can** I ask you something? -Yes, of course you **can**.

You **can't** sit there. Those seats are reserved.

- Lời yêu cầu, đề nghị, gợi ý.

Ex: **Can** you open the door, please?

Can I carry your bags? ~ Yes, please.

I **can** take the car if necessary.

2. Could (có thể)

Could được dùng để diễn đạt:

- Khả năng ở quá khứ - nói người hoặc vật có thể hoặc biết cách làm điều gì đó trong quá khứ.

Ex: She **could** read when she was four.

My last car **could** do 200 kph.

- Sự việc có thể xảy ra ở hiện tại hoặc tương lai nhưng không chắc chắn (nghĩa tương tự *may / might*)

Ex: I don't know what to do when I leave school. I **could** be a computer programmer.

[NOT... ~~I can be a computer programmer~~]

- Sự xin phép (could lễ phép và trịnh trọng hơn can) Could không được dùng để diễn đạt sự cho phép.

Ex: **Could** I have some more cake? ~ No, I'm afraid you **can't**.

[NOT...~~I'm afraid you couldn't.~~]

Could được dùng để nói người nào đó được phép (hoặc không được phép) làm điều gì đó trong quá khứ.

Ex: Peter **couldn't** watch TV yesterday because he was naughty.

- Lời yêu cầu, đề nghị, gợi ý (could lịch sự và trịnh trọng hơn can).

Ex: **Could** you show me how to do this?

You could ask your doctor for a check-up.

3. Be able to (có thể)

- *Be able to* được dùng để diễn đạt khả năng của con người (nhưng *can* và *could* thông dụng hơn).

Ex: Some people **are able to / can** walk on their hands.

She **was able to / could** read when she was four.

* *Can / could* thường được dùng với ý ‘biết cách làm’ và với các động từ chỉ nhận thức như *see, hear, feel, smell, taste, v.v.*)

Ex: **Can** you knit?

We **could** see the village in the distance.

- *Be able to* được dùng thay cho *can* trong cấu trúc nguyên mẫu, sau các động từ tình thái và trong thì hiện tại hoàn thành.

Ex: It's nice to **be able to** go to the opera.

One day scientists **will be able to** find a cure for cancer.

I **have been able to** work better since I got a new computer.

- *Was / were able to* được dùng để diễn đạt người nào đó đã cố xoay xở làm điều gì đó trong một tình huống đặc biệt (không dùng *could*).

Ex: We didn't know where David was, but we **were able to** find him in the end.

[NOT ...~~but we could find him~~]

Tuy nhiên, thể phủ định *couldn't* (could not) có thể dùng trong tất cả các tình huống.

Ex: My grandfather **couldn't** swim.

We looked for David everywhere, but we **couldn't** find him.

EXERCISE 1

Complete the sentences using can (can't), could (couldn't) or be (not) able to. Use can, could if possible; otherwise use be able to.

1. I'm sorry I _____ come to your party next week.
2. When Bob was 16, he _____ run 100 meters in 11 seconds.
3. I haven't _____ sleep very well recently.
4. The computer went wrong, but luckily Emma _____ put it right again.
5. Nicole _____ drive, but she doesn't have a car.
6. Ask Catherine about your problem. She might _____ to help you.
7. As soon as I walked into the room, I _____ smell gas.
8. Mrs Carter _____ put out the fire before the house burnt down.
9. I used to _____ stand on my head, but I _____ do it any more.
10. Nico got a job as a translator because he _____ speak Chinese.
11. A girl fell into the river, but fortunately we _____ rescue her.
12. Where's Martin? ~ He _____ be in the garden. I'm not sure.
13. Lilian _____ know how to ride a horse; she is too young.
14. Matthew will _____ go to the sea tomorrow. He's finished all his work.
15. I looked everywhere for the book, but I _____ find it.

4. May, might (có lẽ, có thể)

- *May / might* được dùng để diễn đạt hành động hoặc sự việc có thể xảy ra ở hiện tại hoặc tương lai, nhưng không mấy chắc chắn (*might* ít chắc chắn, ít khẳng định hơn *may*).

Ex: I **may** go to Sweden next year. (= perhaps I will go there) [50%]

I **might** go to Sweden next year. (= perhaps I will go there) [30%]

Thường thì chúng ta có thể dùng cả *may* và *might*.

Ex: I **may/ might** go to Sweden next year.

Nhưng chúng ta chỉ dùng **might** khi tình huống không có thật.

Ex: If I were in your position, I **might** look for another job.

- **May** được dùng để xin phép hoặc cho phép một cách lịch sự (may trang trọng và lễ phép hơn *can*) *May not* được dùng để từ chối lời xin phép hoặc cấm đoán.

Ex: **May** I use your phone? ~ Yes, you **may**./ No, you **may not**.

Students **may not** use the staff car park.

Might cũng có thể được dùng để xin phép. *Might* rất trình trọng và lịch sự nên ít được dùng hơn *may* và *could*. *Might* không được dùng để diễn đạt sự cho phép.

Ex: **Might** I use your phone? ~ Yes, you **may**./ No, you **may not**.

- *May* được dùng để đề nghị một cách lịch sự, lễ phép.

Ex: May I take your coat?

- *May* được dùng trong lời cầu chúc trang trọng (không dùng *might*).

Ex: **May** you both very happy!

EXERCISE 2

Use **may or might** and a verb from the box to complete each sentence. Sometimes **may or might** are both possible.

ask	rain	go	use	get	buy	write	leave	visit	show
-----	------	----	-----	-----	-----	-------	-------	-------	------

1. I think it _____ again tomorrow; it's so cloudy.
2. Boys, you _____ the room; the class is over.
3. We _____ a new car this year; I'm not sure.
4. You definitely _____ not _____ to that terrible disco again!
5. _____ I _____ you how that works?
6. If you asked me nicely, I _____ you a drink.
7. I _____ Aunt Mary next week, if I have time.
8. If I were you, I _____ a lawyer for some advice.
9. John, _____ I _____ your computer? ~ Yes, of course you .
10. You _____ in pencil or in pen.

5. Must (phải)

Must được dùng để diễn đạt

- Sự cần thiết.

Ex: All applicants **must** take an entrance exam.

- Sự bắt buộc ở hiện tại hoặc tương lai. *Must* thường được dùng để chỉ sự bắt buộc từ phía người nói - người nói thấy cần phải làm điều gì.

Ex: I **must** do some more work; I want to pass my exam.

John, you **must** clean your room now!

- Lời đề nghị, lời gợi ý, lời khuyên, lời mời nhấn mạnh.

Ex: You **must** try some of this cake.

We **must** go and see that new film.

You really **must** come to my party next week.

- Sự suy luận hợp lý, chắc chắn.

Ex: Mary **must** have a problem - she keeps crying.

- Mệnh lệnh, chỉ thị, quy định được viết thành văn bản.

Ex: Staff **must** be at their desks by 8 o'clock.

♦ *Must not (mustn't)* được dùng để chỉ sự cấm đoán.

Ex: Students **must not** use cell phones in class. [= it is not allowed]

6. Have to (phải)

Have to được dùng để diễn đạt

- Sự cần thiết, tương tự như must.

Ex: All applicants **have to** take an entrance exam.

- Sự bắt buộc. *Have to* được dùng để chỉ sự bắt buộc từ bên ngoài (do tình thế, quy định hoặc mệnh lệnh của người khác) - người nói bị buộc phải làm điều gì.

Ex: In my job I **have to** work from nine to five.

I **have to** clean my room now. (My mother's orders)

Have to cũng có thể được dùng để diễn đạt sự bắt buộc từ người nói hoặc người nghe, tương tự như must. Nhưng must thường được dùng để chỉ sự cấp bách và nhấn mạnh tính quan trọng của hành động; *have to* chỉ sự cần thiết của hành động, nhưng không quan trọng.

Ex: Vicky **must** go to the dentist or her toothache will get worse.

Vicky **has to** go to the dentist for a check-up every six months.

- *Have to* được dùng thay must trong thì hiện tại hoàn thành, thì tiếp diễn, thì quá khứ, thì tương lai, dạng nguyên thể và sau các động từ tình thái.

Ex: She **had to** go to the doctor yesterday. [NOT ~~She musted go...~~]

♦ Trợ động từ do được dùng với *have to* trong câu hỏi và câu phủ định. *Do not have to* chỉ sự không cần thiết (= do not need to).

Ex: We **don't have to** wash the windows. They're clean.

[= We don't need to wash...]

EXERCISE 3

Fill in the blank spaces with *must*, *mustn't* or the correct tense of (not) *have to*. Sometimes *must* or *have to* are both possible.

1. You (answer) _____ the questions if you don't want to.
2. You (steal) _____. It's against the law.
3. Last week Tina broke her arm and (go) _____ to hospital.
4. You (wear) _____ your coat today. It's really cold outside.
5. We (hurry) _____; there's lots of time.
6. Julia (wear) _____ glasses since she was very young.
7. Boys, you (write) _____ on the walls and desks.
8. Eric is usually free on the weekends, but sometimes he (work) _____.
9. English children (stay) _____ at school till the age of 16.
10. I (get) _____ up early tomorrow. I have lots to do.
11. High school students (wear) _____ uniforms when they're at school.
12. Dorothy (leave) _____ now or she'll be late for her appointment.

13. If you want to pass at the end of the year, you (get) _____ higher marks.

14. It's an important letter. You (lose) _____ it.

15. Alex (take) _____ his medicine yesterday because he was better.

7. Need (cần phải)

Need được dùng để diễn đạt sự cần thiết.

Ex: This is the only form you **need** fill in.

She **needn't** reserve a seat - there'll be plenty of room.

Need I come in tomorrow?

- *Need not (needn't)* hoặc do not need được dùng để diễn đạt sự không cần thiết (= do not have to).

Ex: You **needn't/ don't need to** tell Jennifer - she already knows.

But: You **mustn't** tell Jennifer - I don't want her to know.

- *Need + verb-ing*: mang nghĩa bị động

Ex: That sofa **needs cleaning**. [= needs to be cleaned]

👉 **Lưu ý:** *Need* thường được dùng như một động từ thường, nhất là trong câu khẳng định. Sau *need* là động từ nguyên mẫu có *to*.

Ex: Everybody **needs to rest** sometimes.

EXERCISE 4

Fill in the blank spaces with the correct words.

1. You _____ read this book. It's really excellent, (must/ need)

2. You _____ ring the bell; I have key. (mustn't/ needn't)

3. You _____ drive fast; there is a speed limit here, (don't have to/ mustn't)

4. You _____ drive fast. We have got plenty of time, (needn't/ mustn't)

5. We _____ paint the house as the walls are very clean, (don't have to/ need to)

6. In England you _____ drive your car on the left, (must/ need to)

7. Candidates _____ bring books into the examination room, (don't have to/ mustn't)

8. Mike _____ wear a lot of warm clothes, as it wasn't very cold, (must/ doesn't need to)

9. Nancy _____ work harder - she's not doing very well, (need to/ doesn't need to)

10. I have a very important test tomorrow, so I _____ study tonight, (have to/ don't need to)

8. Will (sẽ)

Will được dùng để diễn đạt

- Hành động sẽ xảy ra trong tương lai. (Xem phần Thì Tương lai)

Ex: I **will** be back soon.

- Sự tự nguyện và quyết định tức thì.

Ex: Can somebody help me? ~ I **will**.

You can have it for 50 dollars. ~ OK. I'll buy it.

- Lời hứa, lời đe dọa, lời đề nghị, lời yêu cầu, lời mời.

Ex: I promise I **won't** smoke again.

I **will** hit you if you do that again.

I'll wash the dishes if you like.

Will you clean the blackboard, please?

Will you have some more tea?

9. Would (sẽ)

Would được dùng để diễn đạt

- Ý định hoặc sự mong đợi trong quá khứ (là hình thức quá khứ của will).

Ex: They said they **would** meet us at 10.30 at the station.

Arnold knew he **would** be tired the next day.

- Sự việc thường xuyên xảy ra (thói quen) trong quá khứ.

Ex: When we were children we **would** go skating every winter.

- Tình huống hoặc hành động không có thật hoặc tưởng tượng.

Ex: I **would** tell you if I knew, (but I don't know)

It **would** be nice to buy a new car, but we can't afford it.

- Lời yêu cầu {would trang trọng và lịch sự hơn will}.

Ex: **Would** you send me a bill, please?

Would you mind waiting outside?

- Lời đề nghị, lời mời (would ... like).

Ex: **Would** you have dinner with me on Friday?

Would you like some tea?

10. Shall (sẽ)

Shall được dùng để

- Diễn đạt sự việc sẽ xảy ra trong tương lai (dùng với ngôi thứ nhất: I, we).

Ex: I **shall** be rich one day. (or I **will** be rich...)

- Hỏi xin ý kiến hoặc lời khuyên.

Ex: **Shall** I have my hair cut short or leave it long?

What **shall** we do this weekend?

- Đề nghị (Shall I...?) hoặc gợi ý (Shall we...?).

Ex: **Shall I** carry your bag? (= Do you want me to carry your bag?)

Shall we go out for a meal?

EXERCISE 5

Complete these sentences with will, would or shall. Sometimes either could be used.

1. Who do you think _____ win on Saturday?
2. On Sundays when we were kids, mother _____ give us pancakes for breakfast.
3. You _____ need a visa if you are going to Spain.
4. I wish he _____ not play his radio so loud.
5. When my parents were away, my grandmother _____ take care of me.
6. What _____ you like to drink? ~ I _____ have a black coffee, please.
7. We _____ probably go to Scotland in the summer.
8. _____ I wait for you? ~ Oh, thanks. I won't be long.
9. _____ we go to the cinema? ~ Yes, let's.

10. _____ you please help me with this?
11. I _____ say nothing about it if I were you.
12. _____ you have a cigarette? ~No, thanks. I don't smoke.
13. Did you phone Lucy? Oh no, I forgot. I _____ phone her now.
14. What time _____ we come and see you?
15. Anne promised that she _____ come, and I hope she _____.

11. Should, ought to (nên, phải)

Should/ ought to được dùng để:

- Diễn đạt sự bắt buộc, bổn phận. Nghĩa của *should/ ought to* không mạnh bằng *must / have to*.

Ex: Everybody **should/ ought to** wear car seat belt.

- Đưa ra lời khuyên, lời đề nghị hoặc ý kiến.

Ex: You look tired. You **should/ ought to** go to bed.

I don't think you **should/ ought to** work so hard.

- Xin lời khuyên, ý kiến hoặc sự hướng dẫn.

Ex: Do you think I **should/ ought to** apply for this job?

Should we tell him?/ **Ought** we to tell him?

- Dự đoán hoặc suy luận điều gì đó có thể sẽ xảy ra - nói những gì chúng ta nghĩ hoặc mong đợi sẽ xảy ra.

Ex: It **should/ ought to** be fine tomorrow.

[We expect the weather will be fine tomorrow]

Henry **should/ ought to** get here soon - he left home at six.

12. Had better (nên, tốt hơn là)

- *Had better (I'd better)* được dùng để diễn đạt lời khuyên hoặc bảo ai nên làm gì (gồm cả bản thân).

Ex: You'd **better** turn that music down before your Dad get angry.

It's seven o'clock. I'd **better** put the meal in the oven.

- *Had better* có nghĩa tương tự *should / ought to*, nhưng *had better* thường ngụ ý một lời cảnh báo hoặc đe dọa - sẽ xảy ra rắc rối hoặc nguy hiểm nếu không làm theo lời khuyên. *Should/ ought to* chỉ có nghĩa "đó là một điều hay nên làm".

Ex: It's a great film. You **should** go and see it.

[but no problem if you don't]

The film starts at 8.30. You'd **better** go now or you'll be late.

- Dạng phủ định là *had better not*.

Ex: You'd **better not** wake me up when you come in.

EXERCISE 6

Write a sentence giving advice about these situation. Use the words in brackets.

1. Helen plays music late at night (ought not/ play music/ late)
2. Susan rides her motorbike very fast (should/ slowly)
3. James write too slowly (should not/ so slowly)
4. We are often late for school (ought/ on time)

5. My sister doesn't get any exercise (should/ some exercise)
6. Christ doesn't look after the garden properly (ought/ do more work)
7. Nancy wears make-up at school (should not/ school)
8. My brother doesn't wear a helmet when he rides his motorbike (ought not/ ride without/ helmet)
9. Angela does all her washing by hand (should/ buy/ washing machine)
10. Ann spends a lot of money on clothes (ought not/ spend/ so much money)

EXERCISE 7

Put in had better where suitable. If had better is not suitable, use should.

1. I have an appointment in 10 minutes. I _____ go now or I'll be late.
2. It's a great film. You _____ go and see it. You'll really like it.
3. You _____ set your alarm. You'll never get up on time if you don't.
4. When people are driving, they _____ keep their eyes on the road.
5. I'm glad you came to see us. You _____ come more often.
6. She'll be upset if we don't invite her to the wedding, so we _____ invite her.
7. These biscuits are delicious. You _____ try one.
8. I think everybody _____ learn a foreign language.
9. I _____ get up early tomorrow. I've got a lot to do.
10. We _____ stop for petrol soon. The tank is almost empty.

13. Would rather (thích hơn)

Would rather diễn đạt ý thích. Sau *would rather* là động từ nguyên mẫu không to.

Ex: I **would rather** go to a movie tonight.

- Dạng phủ định là *would rather not*.

Ex: I'd **rather not** go out this evening.

♦ Would rather ... than (thích ... hơn)

Ex: I **would rather** stay at home tonight **than** go to the cinema.

♦ Would rather someone *did* something (muốn ai làm điều gì hơn)

Ex: I'd **rather you made** dinner now.

★ Modal verbs + be + V-ing: diễn đạt sự việc đang xảy ra

Ex: Don't phone her now. She **might be having** dinner.

That man on the motorcycle **should be wearing** a helmet.

★ Modal verbs + have + past participle: diễn đạt sự việc đã xảy ra hoặc đã không xảy ra ở quá khứ

Ex: There's nobody at home. They **must have gone** out.

Sue hasn't contacted me. She **can't have got** my message.

Greg **may have been** late for school yesterday, but I'm not sure.

EXERCISE 8

Choose the best form. (Sometimes both may be possible.)

1. We _____ win, but I don't think there's much chance (might/ can)
2. What time will you be home? ~ I'm not sure. I _____ be late (may/ might)

3. _____ you mind staying at home tonight? (Will/ Would)
~ No. But I _____ go out. (had better/ would rather)
4. She _____ clean the whole of the house today (mustn't/ needn't)
5. I think you _____ try to relax more (should/ must)
6. We _____ go to school on Saturdays (must/ have to)
7. I promise I _____ stop smoking (can/ will)
8. One day, everybody _____ say what they like (can/ will be able to)
9. You _____ ride a motorbike without a licence (mustn't/ don't have to)
10. In this country, boys _____ do military service (must not/ don't have to)
11. When I was younger I _____ sing quite well (could/ was able to)
12. You _____ get in without a ticket - not a chance (may not/ can't)
13. It took a long time, but I _____ repair the car. (was able to/ could)
14. _____ I buy a car? What's your advice? (Should/ Could)
15. Mary _____ have a problem - she keeps crying (must/ ought to)
16. You _____ have painted your room black! It's so depressing (mustn't/ shouldn't)
17. On Saturdays, when I was a child, we _____ all get up early and go fishing (would/ could)
18. _____ I to invite my cousin to our party? (Should/ Ought)
19. _____ we go out for dinner? ~ Good idea. (Shall/ Will)
20. What do you think of my theory? ~ I'm not sure. You _____ be right (must/ might)

ĐÁP ÁN MODALS

Exercise 1

- | | | |
|-----------------|--------------------------|------------------------------|
| 1. can't | 6. be able to | 11. were able to |
| 2. could | 7. could | 12. could |
| 3. been able to | 8. was able to | 13. can't |
| 4. was able to | 9. be able to - couldn't | 14. be able to |
| 5. can | 10. could | 15. wasn't able to/ couldn't |

Exercise 2

- | | | |
|--------------------|---------------------|-----------------------------|
| 1. may/ might rain | 5. May ... show | 9. May/ Might ... use - may |
| 2. may leave | 6. might buy | 10. may write |
| 3. may/ might get | 7. may/ might visit | |
| 4. may not go | 8. might ask | |

Exercise 3

- | | | |
|-------------------------|--------------------|-------------------------|
| 1. don't have to answer | 6. has had to wear | 11. have to wear |
| 2. mustn't steal | 7. mustn't write | 12. must leave |
| 3. had to go | 8. has to work | 13. will have to get |
| 4. must wear | 9. have to stay | 14. mustn't lose |
| 5. don't have to hurry | 10. must get | 15. didn't have to take |

Exercise 4

- | | | | |
|------------|------------------|--------------------|-------------|
| 1. need | 4. needn't | 7. mustn't | 10. have to |
| 2. needn't | 5. don't have to | 8. doesn't need to | |
| 3. mustn't | 6. must | 9. need to | |

Exercise 5

- | | | | |
|----------|-----------------|-----------------|------------------|
| 1. will | 5. would | 9. Shall | 13. will |
| 2. would | 6. would - will | 10. Will/ Would | 14. shall |
| 3. will | 7. will/ shall | 11. would | 15. would - will |
| 4. would | 8. Shall | 12. Will | |

Exercise 6

- | | |
|--|---|
| 1. She oughtn't to play music so late. | 6. He ought to do more work. |
| 2. She should ride slowly. | 7. She shouldn't wear make-up at school. |
| 3. He shouldn't write so slowly. | 8. He oughtn't to ride without a helmet. |
| 4. We ought to be on time. | 9. She should buy a washing machine. |
| 5. She should get/ do some exercise. | 10. She oughtn't to spend so much money on clothes. |

Exercise 7

- | | | | | |
|---------------|---------------|---------------|-----------|----------------|
| 1. had better | 3. had better | 5. should | 7. should | 9. had better |
| 2. should | 4. had better | 6. had better | 8. should | 10. had better |

Exercise 8

- | | |
|----------|------------------------|
| 1. might | 11. could/ was able to |
|----------|------------------------|

2. may/ might
3. Would - would rather
4. needn't
5. should
6. have to
7. will
8. will be able to
9. mustn't
10. don't have to

12. can't
13. was able to
14. Should
15. must
16. shouldn't
17. would
18. Ought
19. Shall
20. Might

ADVERB CLAUSES

Mệnh đề trạng ngữ

I. Mệnh đề trạng ngữ chỉ thời gian (Adverb clause of time)

Mệnh đề trạng ngữ chỉ thời gian bắt đầu bằng các liên từ và cụm từ: **after** (sau khi), **before** (trước khi), **when** (khi), **while, as** (khi, trong khi), **by the time** (lúc, vào lúc), **since** (từ khi), **until, till** (cho đến khi), **as/ so long as** (tới khi), **as soon as, once** (ngay khi), **whenever** (bất cứ lúc nào), **every time** (mỗi khi), **no sooner ... than** (ngay khi ... thì), **hardly ... when** (ngay khi ... thì), **the first/ last/ next time** (lần đầu/ lần cuối/ lần kế tiếp)

Ex: **After she graduates**, she will get a job.

When I arrived, they were having lunch.

I haven't seen him **since he left this morning**.

🔗 **Lưu ý:** Không dùng thì tương lai trong mệnh đề trạng ngữ chỉ thời gian.

Ex: When I **see** him tomorrow, I'll ask him. [NOT When I ~~will see~~...]

EXERCISE 1

Put the verbs in brackets into the correct tense.

1. When I (call) _____ John tomorrow, I'll invite him to my party.
2. I want to see Julia before she (go) _____ out tonight.
3. When you (phone) _____ I was working in the garden.
4. The last time I (fly) _____ to New York was in 1995.
5. When everybody (leave) _____ the park, the park keeper will lock the gates.
6. As soon as I hear from him I (let) _____ you know.
7. Once it stopped raining, we (start) _____ the game again.
8. By the time he (come) _____, we will have already left.
9. Every time I see her, I (say) _____ hello.
10. The lift (not start) _____ until you press that button.
11. She won't let him out till he (finish) _____ his homework.
12. Have a good time when you (go) _____ to Paris next week.
13. We met Joe while we (walk) _____ down the street.
14. I haven't seen him since he (leave) _____ this morning.
15. After I (do) _____ my homework last night, I went to bed.
16. Jane will ring us up as soon as she (arrive) _____ in London.
17. My sister (wear) _____ glasses since she was three.
18. I turned off the lights before I (leave) _____ the room.
19. They (watch) _____ television when they heard the explosion.
20. Tomorrow you can paint the bedroom while I (mend) _____ the roof.

II. Mệnh đề trạng ngữ chỉ nơi chốn (Adverb clause of place)

Mệnh đề trạng ngữ chỉ nơi chốn bắt đầu bằng các liên từ: **where** (ở đâu), **wherever** (bất cứ nơi đâu).

Ex: Please sit **where I can see you**.

Wherever she goes, there are crowds of people waiting to see her.

EXERCISE 2

Complete the sentences with *when, whenever, where, wherever*.

1. _____ Mark is angry, his nose gets red.
2. _____ you go, you'll find Coca-Cola.
3. Have a good time _____ you go to Paris next week.
4. I stay with Monica _____ I go to London.
5. I've hidden the money _____ no one will find it.
6. She was followed by press photographers _____ she went.
7. _____ it stops raining, I'll show you the garden.
8. _____ I smiled, he smiled back.
9. Put the picture _____ I can see it.
10. Garlic is a plant that grows _____ there is a warm climate.

III. Mệnh đề trạng ngữ chỉ nguyên nhân hoặc lý do (Adverb clause of cause or reason)

Mệnh đề trạng ngữ chỉ nguyên nhân hoặc lý do thường bắt đầu bằng các liên từ: ***because, since, as*** (do, vì, bởi vì).

Ex: We didn't enjoy the day **because the weather was so awful**.

Since Monday is a holiday, we don't have to go to work.

For, seeing that, now (that), due to the fact that cũng có thể được dùng để bắt đầu mệnh đề trạng ngữ chỉ nguyên nhân hoặc lý do. Mệnh đề với *for* thường đứng sau mệnh đề chính và cách mệnh đề chính bằng dấu phẩy (,).

Ex: **Seeing that the weather was bad**, they didn't go sailing.

John shook, **for he was scared**.

🔑 **Lưu ý:** Dùng *because* khi muốn nhấn mạnh mệnh đề trạng ngữ chỉ lý do; dùng *as, since, seeing that, due to the fact that, now (that)* khi muốn nhấn mạnh mệnh đề chính.

✦ Mệnh đề trạng ngữ chỉ lý do có thể rút gọn thành cụm từ chỉ lý do (phrase of reason) bằng ***because of, due to*** hoặc ***owing to***.

because of/ due to/ owing to + noun/ pronoun/ gerund phrase

Ex: He went to bed **because he was sleepy**.

→ He went to bed **because of being sleepy**.

She was absent from class **because her mother was ill**.

→ She was absent from class **due to her mother's illness**.

EXERCISE 3

Combine the sentences, using the word in brackets.

1. It's raining again. We will have to stay at home (*as*)
2. Eve had an attractive personality. She was very popular (*since*)
3. The traffic was heavy. We were late to the meeting (*due to*)
4. Harry broke his leg. He had to stay in hospital (*because*)
5. It was noisy in the next apartment. I couldn't get to sleep last night. (*because of*)
6. I was tired. I went to bed early (*as*)

7. Lilian was late for work. She missed the bus. (*because*)
8. Mother had burnt the dinner. We ate out. (*since*)
9. Sonia was tired. She worked very hard (*because*)
10. Bill's mother is ill. He has to do all of the cooking and cleaning (*because of*)

IV. Mệnh đề trạng ngữ chỉ sự nhượng bộ (Adverb clause of concession)

Mệnh đề trạng ngữ chỉ sự nhượng bộ bắt đầu bằng: ***though, although, even though*** (*dù, mặc dù*).

Ex: **Even though I was very tired**, I walked all the way home.

He got the job **although he had no qualifications**.

Mệnh đề trạng ngữ chỉ sự nhượng bộ cũng có thể bắt đầu bằng: ***no matter, whatever, however*** hoặc ***adjective/ adverb + as/ though***.

Ex: **No matter what you say**, I won't believe you.

Cold as it was, we went out. (= Although it was cold, ...)

✦ Mệnh đề trạng ngữ chỉ sự nhượng bộ có thể rút gọn thành cụm từ chỉ sự nhượng bộ (phrase of concession) bằng ***despite*** hoặc ***in spite of***.

despite/ in spite of + noun/ pronoun/ gerund

Ex: Although it was raining, we enjoy our holiday.

→ In spite of the rain, we enjoy our holiday.

I couldn't sleep even though I was very tired.

→ I couldn't sleep despite being very tired.

EXERCISE 4

Rewrite the following sentences using the word in brackets and making any other necessary changes.

1. We went to the cinema but we didn't see the film (though)
2. Adam's leg was bleeding. He didn't go to the doctor (although)
3. Emily understood the work but she couldn't answer the question (even though)
4. I enjoyed the film. The story was silly (in spite of)
5. Beatric won the prize. She didn't feel happy (even though)
6. The little boy's balloon burst but he didn't cry. (though)
7. The weather was cold but I went swimming (despite)
8. We live in the same street. We hardly ever see each other (in spite of)
9. I didn't study but I did well in the test anyway (although)
10. He lied to me but I still trust him. (even though)

EXERCISE 5

Complete the sentences with *although/ in spite of/ because/ because of*.

1. We delayed our trip _____ the bad weather.
2. Matt didn't go to school yesterday _____ he didn't feel well.
3. _____ I washed my hands, they still looked dirty.
4. _____ the bad traffic, we arrive on time.
5. I bought a computer _____ I want to play computer games.

6. I didn't get the job _____ having the necessary qualifications.
7. _____ her poor computer skills, Rosa was not considered for the job.
8. I got very wet in the rain _____ I was only go out for five minutes.
9. _____ all our careful plans, a lot of things went wrong.
10. Larry is in good shape physically _____ he gets a lot of exercise.

V. Mệnh đề trạng ngữ chỉ kết quả (Adverb clause of result)

1. So ... that (quả ... đến nỗi, đến nỗi mà)

so + adjective / adverb + that + clause

Ex: The book was **so good that I couldn't put it down.**

- *That* thường được bỏ.

Ex: The book was **so good I couldn't put it down.**

- Đôi khi, để nhấn mạnh, so + adjective được đặt ở đầu câu và theo sau là hình thức đảo ngữ của động từ.

Ex: **So tired was I** that I fell asleep.

- Khi tính từ là many, much, few, little thì có danh từ theo sau.

so + many/ few + plural countable noun + (that) + clause

so + much/ little + uncountable noun + (that) + clause

Ex: She made **so many mistakes (that)** she failed the exam.

She has **so much money (that)** she can buy whatever she wants.

♦ So + adjective + a/ an + noun + (that) + clause

Ex: It was **so hot a day (that)** we decided to stay indoors.

2. Such ... that (quá ... đến nỗi, đến nỗi mà)

such (+ a / an) + adjective + noun + that + clause

Ex: It was **such a cold afternoon that we stopped playing.**

It was **such good coffee that I had another cup.**

- *That* thường được bỏ.

Ex: It was **such a cold afternoon we stopped playing.**

♦ Such + noun + (that) + clause

Ex: The children have made **such a mess (that)** I can't ask you in.

♦ Such a lot (of) + count/ uncount noun + (that) + clause

Ex: There was **such a lot of traffic (that)** I was two hours late for work.

EXERCISE 6

Combine the sentences by using so ... (that) or such ... (that).

1. We did a lot of gymnastics. We couldn't walk afterwards.
2. The car was expensive. We couldn't afford to buy it.
3. It was a long way. We felt very tired.
4. The tree was tall. We couldn't see the top.
5. Judy is a nice person. Everyone likes her.
6. It took us only ten minutes to get there. There was little traffic.

7. Paul had a lot of money. He didn't know how much.
8. The film was very touching. Stephanie cried.
9. 'Don't dump me' was a popular song. Everyone bought the record.
10. I don't feel like going to work. We're having beautiful weather.
11. There were many people on the bus. We couldn't get on.
12. There was a noise in the classroom. The teacher couldn't be heard.
13. Tommy ate too much candy. He got a stomachache.
14. Luke writes badly. No one can read his handwriting.
15. They were beautiful flowers. We took a photograph of them.

VI. Mệnh đề trạng ngữ chỉ mục đích (Adverb clause of purpose)

Mệnh đề trạng ngữ chỉ mục đích bắt đầu bằng: ***so that, in order that*** (để).

so that, in order that + S + will/ would/ can/ could/... + V (bare-inf.)

Ex: Put the milk in the refrigerator **so that it won't spoil**.

I turned on the radio **in order that I could listen to the news**.

- Đôi khi ta có thể dùng thì hiện tại đơn thay cho *will* trong mệnh đề sau *so that/ in order that*, thì hiện tại đơn diễn đạt nghĩa tương lai.

Ex: Put the milk in the refrigerator **so that it doesn't spoil**.

✦ Mệnh đề trạng ngữ chỉ mục đích có thể rút gọn thành cụm từ chỉ mục đích (phrase of purpose) bằng động từ nguyên mẫu có *(to-infinitive)* hoặc ***in order to, so as to***.

in order/ so as (+ not) + to-infinitive

Ex: I turned on the radio **to listen** to the news.

I turned on the radio **in order/ so as to listen** to the news.

🔑 **Lưu ý:** Không dùng *not + to-infinitive* để diễn đạt mục đích phủ định.

Ex: He got up early **in order/ so as not to miss** the bus.

[NOT ~~He got up early not to miss the bus.~~]

EXERCISE 7

Combine the ideas using *so that* & *in order that*.

1. Rachel cried a lot. She wanted her mother to buy her a doll.
2. We send them monthly reports. We want them to have full information.
3. I hurried. I didn't want to be late.
4. I'll send the letter express. I want her to get it before Tuesday.
5. Yoko is learning English. She wants to study in the United States.
6. I moved to the front of the room. I wanted to be able to see better.
7. The little boy pretended to be sick. He wanted to stay home from school.
8. Please arrive early. We want to be able to start the meeting on time.
9. I'll take my umbrella. I don't want to get wet.
10. I put the milk in the refrigerator. I wanted to make sure it didn't spoil.

EXERCISE 8

Match the two sentences and rewrite them, joining them with to, so as (not) to. in order (not) to or so that.

- | | |
|------------------------------------|---|
| 1. I must go on a diet | She had to find her missing bag. |
| 2. James stood up | We wanted to buy some fruit. |
| 3. Mike hid behind the tree | He didn't want to feel cold. |
| 4. They painted the house | He made sure Sally would see it. |
| 5. Andrew put on a pullover | We didn't want to make the floor dirty. |
| 6. We went to market | I want to get thinner |
| 7. George gave a child a sweet | He didn't want to be seen. |
| 8. Mum searched the house | They wanted someone to buy it. |
| 9. We took off our boots | He wanted her to stop crying. |
| 10. Sam left the note on the table | He wanted the children to see him. |

EXERCISE 9

Rewrite the sentences, using the word or phrase in brackets.

- The class was so noisy, so the teacher couldn't hear the question (*since*)
- Paul studied for weeks, but he didn't pass his exams (*even though*)
- We canceled our trip into the city because the weather was bad. (*because of*)
- It was raining heavily, but we decided to go for a bike ride (*in spite of*)
- Jean will come home tonight. I'll give her your message (*as soon as*)
- Her luggage was very heavy. She couldn't carry it. (*so ... that*)
- The milk was very good. We couldn't stop drinking it. (*such ... that*)
- My sister was washing up yesterday evening. She broke a plate (*while*)
- We are going to make an early start. We don't want to get stuck in the traffic (*so that*)
- I keep the window open. I want to let fresh air in. (*so as to*)
- Tony went to Paris. He wanted to see the Eiffel Tower (*because*)
- Jim failed all his university exams although he worked hard (*despite*)
- The telephone rang. The baby woke up. (*when*)
- I had a cold, but I went to class anyway (*although*)
- They locked the door. They didn't want to be disturbed (*in order to*)

ĐÁP ÁN
ADVERB CLAUSES

Exercise 1

- | | | |
|-------------|----------------------------|--------------------------------|
| 1. call | 8. comes | 15. did/ had done |
| 2. goes | 9. say | 16. arrives |
| 3. phoned | 10. won't start | 17. has been wearing/ has worn |
| 4. flew | 11. finishes/ has finished | 18. left |
| 5. has left | 12. go | 19. were watching |
| 6. will let | 13. were walking | 20. am mending |
| 7. started | 14. left | |

Exercise 2

- | | | | |
|-------------|-------------|-------------|--------------|
| 1. Whenever | 4. whenever | 7. When | 10. wherever |
| 2. Wherever | 5. where | 8. Whenever | |
| 3. when | 6. wherever | 9. where | |

Exercise 3

1. As it's raining again, we'll have to stay at home.
2. Since Eve had an attractive personality, she was very popular.
3. We were late to the meeting due to the heavy traffic.
4. Harry had to stay in hospital because he broke his leg.
5. I couldn't get to sleep last night because of the noise in the next apartment.
6. I went to bed early as I was tired.
7. Lilian was late for work because she missed the bus.
8. We ate out since mother had burnt the dinner.
9. Sonia was tired because she worked very hard.
10. Bill has to do all of the cooking and cleaning because of his mother's illness.

Exercise 4

1. Though we went to the cinema, we didn't see the film.
2. Although Adam's leg was bleeding, he didn't go to the doctor.
3. Emily couldn't answer the question even though she understood the work.
4. I enjoyed the film in spite of its silly story.
5. Even though Beatrice won the prize, she didn't feel happy.
6. The little boy didn't cry though his balloon burst.
7. I went swimming despite the cold weather.
8. We hardly ever see each other in spite of living in the same street.
9. I did well in the test although I didn't study.
10. I still trust him even though he lied to me.

Exercise 5

- | | | | |
|---------------|----------------|----------------|-------------|
| 1. because of | 4. In spite of | 7. Because of | 10. because |
| 2. because | 5. because | 8. although | |
| 3. Although | 6. in spite of | 9. In spite of | |

Exercise 6

1. We did such a lot of gymnastics (that) we couldn't walk afterwards.
2. The car was so expensive (that) we couldn't afford to buy it.
3. It was such a long way (that) we felt very tired.
4. The tree was so tall (that) we couldn't see the top.
5. Judy is such a nice person (that) everyone likes her.
6. There was so little traffic (that) it took us only ten minutes to get there.
7. Paul had such a lot of money (that) he didn't know how much.
8. The film was so touching (that) Stephanie cried.
9. 'Don't dump me' was such a popular song (that) everyone bought the record.
10. We're having such beautiful weather (that) I don't feel like going to work.
11. There were so many people on the bus (that) we couldn't get on.
12. There was such a noise in the classroom (that) the teacher couldn't be heard.
13. Tommy ate so much candy (that) he got a stomachache.
14. Luke writes so badly (that) no one can read his handwriting.
15. They were such beautiful flowers (that) we took a photograph of them.

Exercise 7

1. Rachel cried a lot so that her mother would buy her a doll.
2. We send them monthly reports in order that they can have full information.
3. I hurried so that I wouldn't be late.
4. I'll send the letter express so that she gets/ will get it before Tuesday.
5. Yoko is learning English in order that she can study in the United States.
6. I moved to the front of the room so that I could see better.
7. The little boy pretended to be sick in order that he could stay home from school.
8. Please arrive early so that we can start the meeting on time.
9. I'll take my umbrella so that I won't get/ don't get wet.
10. I put the milk in the refrigerator in order that it wouldn't spoil.

Exercise 8

1. I must go on a diet in order to get thinner.
2. James stood up so that the children could see him.
3. Mike hid behind the tree so as not to be seen.
4. They painted the house so that someone would buy it.
5. Andrew put on a pullover in order not to feel cold.
6. We went to market to buy some fruit.
7. George gave a child a sweet so that she would stop crying.
8. Mum searched the house to find her missing bag.
9. We took off our boots so as not to make the floor dirty.
10. Sam left the note on the table so that Sally would/ could see it.

Exercise 9

1. Since the class was so noisy, the teacher couldn't hear the question.

2. Even though Paul studied for weeks, he didn't pass his exams.
3. We canceled our trip into the city because of the bad weather.
4. In spite of the heavy rain we decided to go for a bike ride.
5. As soon as Jean comes home tonight, I'll give her your message.
6. Her luggage was so heavy (that) she couldn't carry it.
7. It was such good milk (that) we couldn't stop drinking it.
8. My sister broke a plate while she was washing up yesterday evening.
9. We are going to make an early start so that we don't/ won't get stuck in the traffic.
10. I keep the window open so as to let fresh air in.
11. Tony went to Paris because he wanted to see the Eiffel Tower.
12. Jim failed all his university exams despite working hard.
13. When the telephone rang, the baby woke up.
14. I went to class although I had a cold.
15. They locked the door in order not to be disturbed.

SUBJECT - VERB AGREEMENT

Sự tương hợp giữa chủ ngữ và động từ

1. Chủ ngữ số ít (singular subject) → động từ số ít (singular verb)

Chủ ngữ số nhiều (plural subject) → động từ số nhiều (plural verb)

Ex: *My friend* **lives** in Boston.

My friends **live** in Boston.

♦ Hai hoặc nhiều chủ ngữ nối với nhau bằng **and** → động từ số nhiều

Ex: *My brother and sister* **live** in Boston.

Khi các danh từ đề cập đến cùng một người/ vật → động từ số ít

Ex: *Bread and eggs* **is** my favourite dish.

2. *Each / every* + danh từ số ít → động từ số ít

Ex: Every child has a **book**.

♦ *Every / each* + danh từ số ít + **and ...** → động từ số ít

Ex: *Every man, woman, and child* **needs** love.

Each book and magazine **is** listed in the card catalog.

♦ *One of / each of / every one of* + danh từ số nhiều → động từ số ít

Ex: *Every one of my friends* **is** here.

♦ *More than one* + danh từ số ít → động từ số ít

Ex: *More than one person* **is** going to have to find a new job.

3. Danh từ + *with/ along with/ together with/ as well as* + danh từ → động từ chia theo danh từ thứ nhất

Ex: *My dog, as well as my cats,* **likes** canned food.

4. *Either / neither / not only* + danh từ + *or / nor / but also* + danh từ → động từ chia theo danh từ thứ hai

Ex: Either you or I am right.

Not only my sister but also my parents are here.

♦ *Neither of / either of / none of* + danh từ số nhiều → động từ số ít/ số nhiều

Ex: Neither of the books **was/ were** published in this country.

5. *All I most/ some I a lot / plenty / half..* + *of* + danh từ số ít → động từ số ít

All /most I some / a lot / plenty I half... + *of* + danh từ số nhiều → động từ số nhiều

Ex: *A lot of the equipment* **is** new.

A lot of my friends **are** here.

6. *The number of* + danh từ số nhiều → động từ số ít

A number of + danh từ số nhiều → động từ số nhiều

Ex: *The number of students in the class* **is** fifteen.

A number of students **have** part-time jobs.

7. *Everyone, everybody, everything, someone, somebody, something, anyone, anybody, anything, nobody, nothing...* → động từ số ít

Ex: *Everybody* **likes** her.

8. *There* + *is/ was* + danh từ số ít

There + are/ were + danh từ số nhiều

Ex: There **is** a book on the shelf.

There **are** some books on the shelf.

9. Danh từ tập hợp

(family, team, government, ...)

động từ số ít (xem như một đơn vị)

+

động từ số nhiều (chỉ từng cá nhân)

Ex: The team **is** in Detroit this weekend.

The team **are** full of enthusiasm.

10. People, crew, police, cattle, poultry, the poor / rich / English → động từ số nhiều

Ex: The police **are** looking for the missing boy.

The poor **have** many problems.

11. Danh từ có dạng số nhiều nhưng có nghĩa số ít: news, physics, economics, maths, linguistics, measles, mumps, rickets, billiards, darts, the Philippines, the United States,... → động từ số ít

Ex: The news **is** interesting.

12. Thời gian (time), tiền (money), khoảng cách (distance), sự đo lường (measurement) → động từ số ít

Ex: Eight hours of sleep **is** enough.

Five thousand miles **is** too far to travel.

Tỷ lệ (percentage) + of +
 danh từ số ít → động từ số ít
 danh từ số nhiều → động từ số nhiều

Ex: Two-thirds of the money **is** mine.

Two-thirds of the pennies **are** mine.

EXERCISE 1

Choose the correct answer in parentheses.

1. Earthquakes (*occurs, occur*) every day of the year.
2. The weather in this country (*gets, get*) very hot during the summer.
3. Every student in my class (*speaks, speak*) English very well.
4. Each boy and girl in the six-grade class (*has, have*) to do a science project.
5. A woman and her child (*is, are*) waiting to see Dr. Chang.
6. Your toast and jam (*is, are*) on the table.
7. Some of the furniture in our apartment (*is, are*) secondhand.
8. Washing the dishes (*is, are*) the children's job.
9. Every one of the students (*is, are*) required to take the final test.
10. About one-third of the Vietnamese (*works, work*) in agriculture.
11. The number of employees (*is, are*) approximately five thousand.
12. Half of the students (*doesn't, don't*) understand a word he says.
13. A number of students (*wants/ want*) to go to Boston next month.
14. There (*is, are*) some interesting pictures in today's paper.

15. A lot of time (*is, are*) needed to learn a language.

EXERCISE 2

Complete the sentences with the correct verb form.

1. The United States (have) _____ a population of around 250 million.
2. No news (be) _____ good news.
3. The police (be) _____ coming. I've already called them.
4. My cousin, along with my aunt and uncle, (work) _____ in my grandpa's firm now.
5. Neither Liz nor her brothers (have) _____ a car because they are all underage.
6. When I was on vacation, all my luggage (be) _____ stolen.
7. Ann, as well as her two sisters, (be) _____ in college.
8. Gymnastics (be) _____ my favorite sport.
9. The poor (have) _____ little money and few possessions.
10. My family (have) _____ decided to move to New York.
11. Not only Jack but also his two best friends (be) _____ chosen.
12. Twenty thousand dollars (be) _____ stolen in the robbery last night.
13. Cattle (be) _____ grazing in the fields.
14. Everybody in my family (enjoy) _____ music and reading.
15. Three days (not be) _____ long enough for a good vacation.

ĐÁP ÁN
SUBJECT - VERB AGREEMENT

Exercise 1

- | | | | |
|-----------|--------|-----------|----------|
| 1. occur | 5. are | 9. is | 13. want |
| 2. gets | 6. is | 10. work | 14. are |
| 3. speaks | 7. is | 11. is | 15. is |
| 4. has | 8. is | 12. don't | |

Exercise 2

- | | | | |
|---------------|---------|----------|-------------------|
| 1. has | 5. Have | 9. have | 13. are |
| 2. is | 6. was | 10. have | 14. enjoys |
| 3. are | 7. is | 11. were | 15. is not/ isn't |
| 4. is working | 8. is | 12. was | |

PREPOSITIONS

Giới từ

1. Giới từ chỉ thời gian (Prepositions of time)

♦ **In** (trong, vào)-, tháng, năm, mùa, thập niên, thế kỷ, các buổi trong ngày (ngoại trừ *at night*), thời kỳ

Ex: **in** January, **in** 1991, in winter, in the 1980s, **in** the 21st century, **in** the morning, **in** the Middle Ages

In còn có thể được dùng để nói trong bao lâu nữa việc gì đó sẽ xảy ra hoặc việc gì đó xảy ra trong bao lâu.

Ex: I'll see you again **in a month/ in a month's time**. (= a month from now)

He wrote the book **in a month**. (= it took him a month to write)

[NOT ... ~~in a month's time~~]

➤ **In time** (đúng lúc, kịp lúc)

Ex: Irene arrived **in time** to see her father before his plane left.

* **At** (vào lúc)-, thời gian (theo đồng hồ), thời điểm trong ngày hoặc các kỳ nghỉ (toàn bộ các ngày trong kỳ nghỉ)

Ex: **at** 6 o'clock, **at** night, **at** noon, **at** midnight, **at** bedtime, **at** dawn, **at** the weekend (*U.S. on the weekend*), **at** Christmas, **at** New Year

At còn được dùng trong một số cụm từ chỉ thời gian: *at the age of...*, *at the moment*, *at present*, *at the same time*, *at once*, *at that time*, *at any time*, *at first*, *at last*, etc.

* **On** (vào)-, ngày trong tuần, ngày tháng trong năm, ngày trong kỳ nghỉ hoặc các buổi trong ngày cụ thể.

Ex: **on** Monday, **on** 5th January, **on** Christmas Day, **on** Wednesday morning, **on** one's birthday

➤ **On time** (đúng giờ)

Ex: Betty arrived **on time**. She wasn't early or late.

♦ **For** (trong) + khoảng thời gian: **for** two months, **for** a long time, **for** ages

♦ **Since** (từ, từ khi) + mốc thời gian: **since** last Monday, **since** 2002

♦ **Until / till** (đến, cho đến): **until** 5 o'clock, **till** midnight

♦ **Before** (trước, trước khi): **before** lunchtime

♦ **After** (sau, sau khi): **after** lunchtime

♦ **During** (trong, suốt): **during** World War II

♦ **By** (vào lúc): **by** the end of May

♦ **From ... to** (từ ... đến): **from** morning **to** noon

EXERCISE 1

Fill in the blank spaces with an appropriate prepositions: *at, in, on, before, after, since, for, until, from, to*.

1. _____ Sundays, I usually practise piano _____ 9.00 _____ 10.30.
2. Jane went to school _____ she went to university.
3. Thomas hasn't been to the dentist _____ last year.
4. We have a holiday _____ New Year.

5. My youngest sister was born _____ 6th October, 1999.
6. We went to bed _____ we had our supper.
7. Have you heard about Cathy's party _____ the weekend, _____ Saturday evening?
8. Paul will wait _____ Elizabeth arrives.
9. He left school _____ the age of 18, _____ 1983.
10. Where are you going _____ Christmas Eve?
11. We are living _____ the twenty-first century.
12. Sandra usually gets home _____ lunchtime.
13. My cousin's birthday is _____ the spring, _____ 15th February.
14. Let's meet again _____ the afternoon, _____ around 9:30.
15. Polly has been living in this house _____ seven years.

2. Giới từ chỉ nơi chốn (Prepositions of place)

♦ **At** (*ở, tại*), vị trí tại một điểm; một nơi chốn cụ thể.

Ex: **at** home, **at** school, **at** the bus stop/ airport/ station, **at** the office, **at** the cinema/ theater, **at** the seaside, **at** the grocer's, **at** 23 Brookfield Avenue, **at** the top/ bottom/ back, **at** the beginning/ end, **at** the front/ back

♦ **In** (*trong, ở trong*), vị trí trong một diện tích, một không gian; vị trí trong một con đường, thị trấn, thành phố, quốc gia, miền, phương hướng hoặc trong ô tô.

Ex: **in** a box, **in** a small room, **in** the countryside, **in** the world, **in** the sky, **in** Oxford Street, **in** London, **in** Vietnam, **in** the east, **in** a car/ taxi

♦ **On** (*trên, ở trên*), vị trí trên bề mặt; số tầng (trong một tòa nhà); tên đường (us).

Ex: **on** the table, **on** the wall, **on** the ground, **on** the first floor, **on** Albert Street

- **On** được dùng với một số phương tiện đi lại: *on a bus/ train! plane I bike! motorbike I horse, on foot*

- **On** còn được dùng trong một số cụm từ: *on the left! right, on the farm, on the coast I beach, on TV/ radio, on holiday, on the phone I telephone, on a trip! tour! cruise*

♦ **Above / over** (*bên trên - không tiếp xúc với bề mặt*)

♦ **Under / below** (*ở dưới, bên dưới*)

♦ **In front of** (*ở phía trước*)

♦ **Behind** (*ở phía sau*)

♦ **In the middle** (*ở giữa*)

♦ **Near** (*gần*)

♦ **Next to / by / beside** (*bên cạnh, kế bên*)

♦ **Between** (*ở giữa hai người/ vật*)

♦ **Among** (*ở giữa nhiều người/ vật*)

♦ **Inside** (*ở bên trong*); **outside** (*ở bên ngoài*)

♦ **Opposite** (*đối diện*)

EXERCISE 2

Fill in the blank spaces with the correct preposition from the brackets.

1. We have a bakery _____ the house so I don't have to walk far. (in, near, on)

2. Is there a cinema _____ your house, on the other side of the street? (opposite, over, at)
3. Dorothy lives _____ 34, Victor Hugo Street (at, on, in)
4. There's a sweetshop _____ my first floor flat (inside, below, across)
5. My book is _____ the bottom of the cupboard (in, on, at)
6. My grandparents live _____ Toulouse, _____ France (in, on, at)
7. Look! There are some horses _____ the street (near, in, at)
8. There was along queue of people _____ the bus stop (in, at, on)
9. Adam sat _____ Nancy and Judy at the cinema (among, at, between)
10. The tree _____ the house gives shade to the back garden (behind, between, under)
11. Paris is _____ the River Seine (in, on, at)
12. Shall we travel _____ your car or _____ my motorbike? (in, on, at)
13. Have you seen the notice _____ the notice board? (at, on, under)
14. The teacher stood _____ the students (among, above, between)
15. Come and walk _____ me so we can talk (between, among, beside)

3. Giới từ chỉ sự chuyển động (Prepositions of movement)

- ♦ **To** (đến) Come **to** my house on Saturday.
- ♦ **Towards** (về phía) Angela walked **towards** her father.
- ♦ **From** (từ) We walk home **from** school every day
- ♦ **From ... to** (từ...đến) How far is it **from** New York **to** California?
- ♦ **Through** (qua, xuyên qua) We climbed **through** the window.
- ♦ **Across** (bằng qua) Bob walked **across** the street.
- ♦ **Round/ around** (quanh) The Earth moves **round / around** the Sun.
- ♦ **Along** (dọc theo) We had a walk **along** the river bank.
- ♦ **Up** (lên) / **down** (xuống) The children ran **up** the stairs.
- ♦ **Into** (vào, vào trong) The frog jumped **into** the water.
- ♦ **Out of** (ra ngoài) After the class we ran **out of** the room.
- ♦ **Onto** (lên trên) Lulu jumped **onto** to my chair.
- ♦ **Over** (qua, vượt qua) I climbed **over** the fence.
- ♦ **Under** (bên dưới) The fisherman walked **under** the bridge.

➤ **Arrive in** a city or a country

Ex: They arrived **in** New York / **in** France a week ago.

➤ **Arrive at** a village, a building, an event

Ex: When did they **arrive at** the village/ **at** the hotel/ **at** the airport/ **at** the station/ **at** the party/ **at** the meeting?

EXERCISE 3

Fill in the blank spaces with the correct preposition.

1. Three people were taken _____ the hospital after the accident.
2. I'd lost my key, so I climbed _____ the house _____ a window.
3. Let's walk _____ the street to the other side.
4. Look! Those sheep are jumping _____ the wall.

5. What time does this train arrive _____ Paris?
6. We are planning to drive _____ Los Angeles _____ Denver.
7. Nick fell _____ the stairs last week.
8. She got _____ the car and went _____ a shop.
9. The child stood up and ran _____ his mother.
10. They walked slowly _____ the road.
11. Yesterday I saw John when I was walking home _____ work.
12. She is the first woman to sail _____ the world.
13. The train arrived _____ the station 20 minutes late.
14. Don't walk _____ the ladder. It is bad luck.
15. Rita is going _____ the stairs to the ground floor.

★ Một số giới từ theo sau tính từ và động từ thông dụng

◆ Tính từ + giới từ (adjective + preposition)

be afraid / scared / frightened / terrified <i>of</i>	be angry <i>with / at</i> (sb) <i>about</i> (sth)
be capable / incapable <i>of</i>	be familiar <i>with</i>
be aware <i>of</i>	be pleased / delighted <i>with</i>
be full / short <i>of</i>	be satisfied / disappointed <i>with</i>
be fond <i>of</i>	be crowded <i>with</i>
be tired / sick <i>of</i>	be fed up / bored <i>with</i>
be proud / jealous / ashamed <i>of</i>	be impressed <i>with/ by</i>
be nice / kind <i>of / to</i>	be different <i>from / to</i>
be keen <i>on</i>	be similar <i>to</i>
be dependent <i>on</i>	be grateful <i>to</i> (sb) <i>for</i> (sth)
be independent <i>of</i>	be interested <i>in</i>
be anxious / worried / nervous <i>about</i>	be successful <i>in</i>
be sad / upset / angry <i>about</i> (sth)	be responsible <i>for</i>
be famous / known <i>for</i>	be surprised / amazed <i>at</i>
be good / bad <i>at</i> (sth/ doing sth)	be amused / delighted <i>at</i>
be good / bad <i>for</i> (sb/ sth)	be excited <i>about / at / by</i>

◆ Động từ + giới từ (verb + preposition)

to talk / speak <i>to</i> (sb) <i>about</i> (sth)	to worry <i>about</i>
to listen <i>to</i>	to warn <i>about / of</i>
to complain <i>to</i> (sb) <i>about</i> (sth)	to forget <i>about</i>
to object <i>to</i>	to arrive <i>at / in</i>
to apologise <i>to</i> (sb) <i>for</i> (sth)	to look / stare / glance <i>at</i>
to explain <i>to</i> (sb)	to laugh <i>at</i>
to belong <i>to</i>	to aim / point / throw <i>at</i>
to look forward <i>to</i>	to live <i>on</i>
to thank (sb) <i>for</i> (sth)	to congratulate <i>on</i>

to pay <i>for</i>	to compliment <i>on</i>
to blame (sb/ sth) <i>for</i> (sth)	to concentrate <i>on</i>
to care <i>for</i> I <i>about</i>	to depend / rely <i>on</i>
to seach / wait <i>for</i>	to insist <i>on</i>
to pray <i>for</i>	to spend <i>on</i>
to excuse / forgive (sb) <i>for</i> (sth)	to blame (sth) <i>on</i> (sb)
to accuse / suspect <i>of</i>	to believe <i>in</i>
to approve / disapprove <i>of</i>	to participate / take part <i>in</i>
to consist <i>of</i>	to succeed <i>in</i>
to take care <i>of</i>	to divide / cut / split <i>into</i>
to think <i>of</i> I <i>about</i>	to distinguish <i>from</i>
to dream <i>of</i> I <i>about</i>	to protect / prevent <i>from</i>
to agree / disagree <i>with</i> (sb) <i>about/ on</i> (sth)	to suffer <i>from</i>
to argue <i>with</i> (sb) <i>about/ over</i> (sth)	to separate <i>from</i>
to provide / help (sb) <i>with</i> (sth)	to prefer (sth) <i>to</i> (sth)
to compare <i>with</i>	

EXERCISE 4

Supply appropriate prepositions.

1. Do you believe _____ ghosts?
2. Everybody was surprised _____ the news.
3. Are you excited _____ going away next week?
4. I'm depending _____ you to finish this work for me.
5. I'm very fond _____ their children.
6. I can't distinguish one twin _____ the other.
7. Are you angry _____ what happened?
8. She wore sunglasses to protect her eyes _____ the sun.
9. Mark Twain became internationally famous _____ his novels.
10. My mother is always nice _____ everyone.
11. He agreed _____ them _____ the need for change.
12. I am grateful _____ you _____ your assistance.
13. I thanked Sam _____ helping me fix my car.
14. My brother is not very good _____ repairing things.
15. Fresh vegetables are good _____ you.

EXERCISE 5

Complete the sentences with the correct prepositions.

1. Diane is going away _____ a week _____ September.
2. We always go out for dinner _____ Jane's birthday.
3. You look bored. You don't seem interested _____ what I'm saying.
4. We spoke _____ Dr. Carter _____ our problem.
5. Jack's plane arrived _____ the airport _____ Mexico City two hours ago.

6. I saw Steve _____ a football match _____ Saturday?
7. The bus was full _____ people. There were too many people _____ it.
8. Carl was born _____ Chicago, but his family moved _____ New York when he was three.
9. The river Rhine flows _____ the North Sea.
10. Peter apologized _____ Jane _____ his behavior.
11. Have you ever worked _____ a farm?
12. My train arrived _____ 11.30. Can you meet me _____ the station?
13. Shhh. I'm trying to concentrate _____ my work.
14. We're looking forward _____ our vacation next month.
15. My coat is similar _____ yours, but different _____ Ben's.
16. _____ weekends, we often go for long walks in the country.
17. I haven't seen Kate _____ a few months. I last saw her _____ 24th April.
18. Parents are always proud _____ their children.
19. Look _____ these flowers. Are they pretty?
20. Don't listen _____ what he says. He doesn't know what he's talking _____.

ĐÁP ÁN PREPOSITIONS

Exercise 1

- | | | | |
|-------------------|----------------|------------|-------------|
| 1. On - from - to | 5. on | 9. at - in | 13. in - on |
| 2. before | 6. after | 10. on | 14. in - at |
| 3. since | 7. at/ on - on | 11. in | 15. for |
| 4. at | 8. until | 12. at | |

Exercise 2

- | | | | |
|-------------|------------|-------------|------------|
| 1. near | 5. at | 9. between | 13. on |
| 2. opposite | 6. in - in | 10. behind | 14. among |
| 3. at | 7. in | 11. on | 15. beside |
| 4. below | 8. at | 12. in - on | |

Exercise 3

- | | | | |
|-------------------|------------------|-------------------|-----------|
| 1. to | 5. in | 9. towards | 13. at |
| 2. into - through | 6. from - to | 10. along | 14. under |
| 3. across | 7. out of | 11. from | 15. down |
| 4. over | 8. out of - into | 12. around/ round | |

Exercise 4

- | | | | |
|----------|----------|------------------|---------|
| 1. in | 5. of | 9. for | 13. for |
| 2. at | 6. from | 10. to | 14. at |
| 3. about | 7. about | 11. with - about | 15. for |
| 4. on | 8. from | 12. to - for | |

Exercise 5

- | | | | |
|---------------|--------------|---------------|----------------|
| 1. in - in | 6. at - on | 11. on | 16. At/ On |
| 2. on | 7. of - on | 12. at - at | 17. for - on |
| 3. in | 8. in - to | 13. on | 18. of |
| 4. to - about | 9. into | 14. to | 19. at |
| 5. at - in | 10. to - for | 15. to - from | 20. to - about |

CONNECTIVES

Từ nối

Từ nối là từ được dùng để nối các từ, cụm từ hoặc mệnh đề với nhau. Từ nối được phân loại theo nghĩa của chúng.

1. Chỉ sự thêm vào: *and, both ... and, not only ... but also, as well as, besides, furthermore, moreover, in addition, ...*

Ex: He plays tennis **and** volleyball.

Not only my sister **but also** my parents are here.

2. Chỉ sự tương phản hoặc trái ngược: *but, yet, still, however, nevertheless, even though! although! though, in spite of, despite,...*

Ex: He had no qualifications, **but** he got the job.

He had no qualifications. **However**, he got the job.

Although he had no qualifications, he got the job.

3. Chỉ sự lựa chọn hoặc điều kiện: *or, or else, otherwise, if, unless, either... or, neither ... nor, ...*

Ex: You can walk up **or** take the cable car.

You'd better hurry. **Otherwise**, you'll be late.

You'll be late **if** you don't hurry.

4. Chỉ nguyên nhân và kết quả: *so, therefore, consequently, because, since, as, for, because of, such ... that, so ... that*

Ex: John didn't study hard, **so** he failed the final exam.

John didn't study hard. **Therefore**, he failed the final exam.

John failed the final exam **because** he didn't study hard.

5. Chỉ mục đích: *so that, in order that, in order to, so as to*

Ex: I turned on the radio **so that** I could listen to the news.

I turned on the radio **in order to** listen to the news.

6. Chỉ mối quan hệ về thời gian: *when, whenever, while, as, after, before, since,...*

Ex: The lift stopped **when** she pressed the button.

As I left the house I remembered the key.

EXERCISE 1

Choose the correct connectives.

1. Dad washed the dishes, _____ Peter put them away (and, but, or)
2. The students were on time, _____ the teacher was late (so, or, but)
3. Was the test hard _____ easy? (and, or, but)
4. It started to rain, _____ we stayed at home and watch TV. (but, so, and)
5. Mike could speak French, _____ not Italian (or, and, but)
6. Can you watch television _____ read the newspaper at the same time? (or, and, but)
7. I didn't need the bike anymore, _____ I sold it. (so, but, and)
8. Laura both enjoys books _____ music (or, but, and)
9. After the trip, we were tired _____ happy (and, but, or)

10. You'd better hurry, _____ you'll be late for class (or, so, but)
11. The weather was cold, _____ it was warm inside our house (but, so, and)
12. Either he will go to the movie, _____ he will go to the play (and, but, or)
13. He sat down on the sofa _____ turned on the television (and, but, or)
14. Peter wanted a cup of coffee, _____ he heat some water (and, but, so)
15. I called their house, _____ no one answered the phone (so, and, but)

EXERCISE 2

Complete the sentences with the appropriate connectives.

1. My watch was broken, _____ I bought a new one.
2. Carol stayed in bed _____ she felt really ill.
3. Nancy saved up her money _____ she could buy leather boots.
4. Always wash your hands _____ you have a meal.
5. The teacher lectured, _____ the students took notes.
6. She did not study, _____ she passed the exam.
7. _____ I don't like vegetables, I eat them every day.
8. Edward missed the final exam. _____, he failed the course.
9. We must be early, _____ we won't get a seat.
10. We must work quickly. _____, we won't finish before dark.
11. _____ Jane studies hard, she will pass all of her exams.
12. In my spare time, I enjoy reading novels _____ watching television.
13. She spoke very quietly _____ nobody could hear a word.
14. Mike was really sleepy. _____, he stayed up late to watch the end of the game on TV.
15. _____ her illness, she missed the class.
16. Carol went to work _____ feeling ill.
17. The food was _____ hot that it burned my tongue.
18. My neighborhood is quiet and safe. _____, I always lock my doors.
19. There was fog at Heathrow; _____, our plane's departure was delayed.
20. _____ we were having dinner, the telephone rang.

EXERCISE 3

Rewrite the sentences, using the given connectives.

1. The children stayed home because a storm was approaching (*therefore*)
2. I didn't have my umbrella, so I got wet. (*consequently*)
3. Paul is saving his money in order to travel in Europe next summer (*so that*)
4. If you don't leave now, you'll be late for class (*otherwise*)
5. Jane had a sore throat, yet she still went to work (*however*)
6. He is very rich. He bought a whole island (*so ... that*)
7. There isn't any air in one of the tires, so I can't ride my bicycle (*because*)
8. I got to class on time although I missed my bus. (*but*)
9. Because of the bad weather we didn't really enjoy our holiday (*so*)
10. I had a lot of studying to do, but I went to a movie anyway (*even though*)

11. Sue has bought a new coat. She's bought some new boots as well (*and*)
12. I was very sleepy, but I finished all of my work anyway (*nevertheless*)
13. Olga did poor work. She was fired from her job. (*such ... that*)
14. The teacher doesn't know the answer. The students don't know the answer. (*neither ... nor*)
15. Barbara is studying Chinese. She is also studying Japanese (*not only ... but also*)

ĐÁP ÁN
CONNECTIVES

Exercise 1

- | | | | |
|--------|--------|---------|---------|
| 1. and | 5. but | 9. but | 13. and |
| 2. but | 6. and | 10. or | 14. so |
| 3. or | 7. so | 11. but | 15. but |
| 4. so | 8. and | 12. or | |

Exercise 2

- | | |
|----------------------------------|-----------------------------|
| 1. so | 11. If |
| 2. because/ since/ as | 12. or |
| 3. so that/ in order that | 13. so that |
| 4. before | 14. However/ Nevertheless |
| 5. and | 15. Because of/ Due to |
| 6. but | 16. despite/ in spite of |
| 7. Although/ Though/ Even though | 17. so |
| 8. Therefore/ Consequently | 18. However/ Nevertheless |
| 9. or (else) | 19. therefore/ consequently |
| 10. Otherwise | 20. While/ As/ When |

Exercise 3

1. A storm was approaching. Therefore, the children stayed home.
2. I didn't have my umbrella. Consequently, I got wet.
3. Paul is saving his money so that he can travel in Europe next summer.
4. You leave now. Otherwise, you'll be late for class.
5. Jane had a sore throat. However, she still went to work.
6. He is so rich that he bought a whole island.
7. Because there isn't any air in one of the tires, I can't ride my bicycle.
8. I missed my bus, but I got to class on time.
9. The weather was bad, so we didn't really enjoy our holiday.
10. I went to a movie even though I had a lot of studying to do.
11. Sue has bought a new coat and some new boots.
12. I was very sleepy. Nevertheless, I finished all of my work.
13. Olga did such poor work that she was fired from her job.
14. Neither the teacher nor the students know the answer.
15. Barbara is studying not only Chinese but also Japanese.

TEST 1

I. Choose the best answer to complete the sentence.

1. My birthday is _____ January 15th.
a. in b. on c. at d. since
2. Mark prefers cycling _____ driving.
a. to b. for c. as d. than
3. You had better get up earlier _____ you can get to class on time.
a. so that b. because c. so as d. but
4. _____ you like me to do that for you?
a. Could b. Can c. Will d. Would
5. Your sister used to visit you quite often, _____?
a. didn't she b. doesn't she c. usedn't she d. wouldn't she
6. Do you _____ my turning the television on now.
a. approve b. object c. mind d. want
7. The teacher said the homework _____ carefully.
a. has to do b. has to be done c. had to do d. had to be done
8. Today, skinny jeans are very _____, especially with teenagers.
a. popular b. convenient c. enjoyable d. traditional
9. I have learned all the irregular verbs _____.
a. from memory b. by the heart c. in the memory d. by heart
10. 'Do you mind if I stay a little longer?' '_____'
a. Of course, I mind. b. No, not at all.
c. It's my pleasure. d. It's nice of you.

II. Give correct form of the word.

11. Children seem to have lost their _____ in reading (**enjoy**)
12. Visitors were really impressed by the _____ of the villagers (**friend**)
13. The Chinese class is _____, but English is _____. (**option - compel**)
14. There has been a great _____ in his English, (**improve**)
15. I'm not very good at German, but I can make myself _____. (**understand**)

III. Give correct form or tense of the verb.

16. A lot of trees (blow) _____ down in the storm last night.
17. As far as I know, she (not come) _____ back yet.
18. He (send) _____ me a very nice letter a few days ago.
19. John wishes he (have) _____ a mountain bike.
20. How much time do you spend (surf) _____ the web a day?

IV. Choose the underlined word or phrase that needs correcting.

21. Tomorrow we go to the store to buy some new furniture.

A B C D

22. If he won't come soon, we might miss the last bus.

A B C D

23. There is a meeting between 9am and 11am in Monday morning.

A B C D

24. When he was a little boy, he used to going swimming with me.

A B C D

25. No one pushed you to take the job, didn't they?

A B C D

V. Fill in each numbered blank with a word from the box.

peace	fields	travel	relieve	roaming	trip	popular	lack
-------	--------	--------	---------	---------	------	---------	------

Taking a (26) _____ to the countryside can be a breather for people. Not only that, it can definitely (27) _____ stress, anxiety, and all the negative emotions one may be feeling due to a (28) _____ of rest and too much stress. Here, you will find people living in (29) _____ and as one with nature. You will also find farms and (30) _____. You will find animals (31) _____ around in farms and barns as well. The best way to appreciate life in the countryside is to (32) _____ here. The most (33) _____ accommodations here are farmhouses.

VI. Read the passage carefully, then answer the questions.

Pen pals are people who regularly write to each other, particularly via postal mail. A pen pal relationship is often used to practice reading and writing in a foreign language, to improve literacy, to learn more about other countries and life-styles, and to make friendships. As with any friendships in life, some people remain pen pals for only a short time, while others continue to exchange letters and presents life-long. Some pen pals eventually arrange to meet face to face.

Pen pals come in all ages, nationalities and cultures. You can get pen pals by visiting pen pal sites on the internet. Pen pal clubs can also be found in magazine columns, newspapers, and sometimes through clubs or special interest groups. Some clubs may be free while others may charge a partial or full subscription fee.

34. What are pen pals?

35. What are the benefits of having a pen pal?

36. How long can pen pal relationships last?

37. Where can we find pen pal clubs?

38. Do all pen pal clubs charge a subscription fee?

VII. Rewrite the sentences.

39. It's a pity I can't go to the farewell party tonight.

I wish _____

40. The last time we played football together was in 1999.

We haven't _____

41. Thousands of people saw his paintings.

His paintings _____

42. 'Do you want me to type your report, Susan?' Jim asked.

Jim asked _____

ĐÁP ÁN
TEST 1

I.

1. b 2. a 3. a 4. d 5. a 6. c 7. d 8. a 9. d 10. b

II.

11. enjoyment	14. improvement
12. friendliness	15. understood
13. optional - compulsory	

III.

16. were blown	19. had
17. hasn't come	20. surfing
18. sent	

IV.

21. A (will go/ are going)	24. D (go swimming)
22. A (doesn't)	25. C (did)
23. D (on Monday morning)	

V.

26. trip	28. lack	30. fields	32. travel
27. relieve	29. peace	31. roaming	33. popular

VI.

34. Pen pals are people who regularly write to each other, particularly via postal mail.

35. The benefits of having a pen pal are to practice reading and writing in foreign language, to improve literacy, to learn more about other countries and lifestyles and to make friendships.

36. Some pen pal relationships last only a short time, while others can last all through your life.

37. We can find pen pal clubs on the Internet, in magazine columns, newspapers and sometimes through clubs or special interest groups.

38. No, they don't. Some clubs may be free while others may charge a partial or full subscription fee.

VII.

39. I wish I could go to the farewell party tonight.

40. We haven't played football together since 1999.

41. His paintings were seen by thousands of people.

42. Jim asked Susan if/ whether she wanted him to type her report.

TEST 2

I. Choose the best answer to complete the sentence.

1. Wearing uniform encourages students to be proud _____ being students of their school.
a. to b. with c. for d. of
2. Vietnamese schools begin _____ September.
a. on b. in c. at d. from
3. I asked him his name, but he didn't _____.
a. correspond b. deny c. mention d. respond
4. I shouted for help, but _____ came.
a. nobody b. somebody c. anybody d. everybody
5. That television program is not only _____ but also entertaining.
a. convenient b. informative c. necessary d. economical
6. I do wish I _____ speak French well.
a. will b. would c. can d. could
7. My father _____ enjoy gardening, but he doesn't have time for it now.
a. uses to b. was used to c. got used to d. used to
8. If you take a train or a bus, you must pay a _____.
a. fee b. fare c. wage d. tip
9. He went to a seaside resort _____ he was keen on water-skiing.
a. because b. although c. so that d. while
10. 'You don't like playing computer games, do you?' ' _____ '
a. Yes, I don't like. b. No, I do like.
c. No, not at all. d. Yes, I think so.

II. Give correct form of the word.

11. Housework has _____ been regarded as women's work (tradition)
12. He drives so _____ that he often has accidents (care)
13. The Internet is a wonderful _____ of modern life (invent)
14. Many designers took _____ from Vietnam's ethnic minorities (inspire)
15. We apologize for the delay and any _____ caused (convenient)

III. Give correct form or tense of the verb.

16. They (study) _____ English for about five years so far.
17. My parents always make me (do) _____ my homework before I go out.
18. Most teenagers said they (love) _____ wearing jeans and T-shirts.
19. Would you mind (answer) _____ the telephone, please?
20. While the reporter (interview) _____ the policeman, the robber (escape) _____.

IV. Choose the underlined word or phrase that needs correcting.

21. Let's go somewhere for a drink, will we?

A B C D

22. Edward played a lot of golf since he got his new golf clubs.

39. You/ should/ practice/ listen/ English News/ every day

40. Yesterday/ I/ see/ your advertisement/ the Tuoi Tre
41. She/ like/ go on/ the Internet/ the evenings
42. The Tuoi Tre/ widely/ read/ both/ teenagers/ adults

ĐÁP ÁN
TEST 2

I.

1. d 2. b 3. d 4. a 5. b 6. d 7. d 8. b 9. a 10. c

II.

11. traditionally

14. inspiration

12. carelessly

15. inconvenience

13. invention

III.

16. have studied/ have been studying

19. answering

17. do

20. was interviewing - escaped

18. loved

IV.

21. D (shall we)

23. D (can't)

25. D (tallest)

22. A (has played)

24. C (not to)

V.

26. b 27. c 28. a 29. b 30. d 31. c 32. a 33. d

VI.

34. T 35. F 36. F 37. T

VII.

39. You should practice listening English News every day.

40. Yesterday I saw your advertisement in the Tuoi Tre.

41. She likes going/ to go on the Internet in the evenings.

42. The Tuoi Tre is widely read by both teenagers and adults.

TEST 3

I. Choose the best answer to complete the sentence.

1. Ba and his friends often ride to the countryside _____ the weekend.
a. in b. for c. on d. by
2. I'm sure you will succeed _____ the Le Hong Phong entrance examination.
a. on b. in c. with d. of
3. We _____ her a happy birthday.
a. wished b. suggested c. advised d. wanted
4. Last night I _____ finish my Physics exercises, so I couldn't go out.
a. must b. mustn't c. had to d. didn't have to
5. You have read this article on the website, _____?
a. do you b. don't you c. have you d. haven't you
6. Most foreign students are staying in the _____ of the college.
a. institute b. dormitory c. housing d. council
7. She asked me _____ I liked eating strawberry cream.
a. what b. that c. which d. if
8. Mandela became a _____ of the anti-apartheid struggle.
a. sign b. signal c. symbol d. symptom
9. It was _____ boring film that we turned off the TV set.
a. so b. such c. too d. such a
10. 'Thanks for all your help.' ' _____',
a. I'd love to. b. My pleasure. c. Certainly. d. My happiness.

II. Give correct form of the word.

11. Have you seen the latest _____ for Coca Cola? (advertise)
12. I'm afraid you don't have the necessary _____ for the job. (qualify)
13. In Viet Nam, the Ao Dai is the _____ dress for women (nation)
14. Nguyen Du is one of the great _____ of Vietnamese history (poetry)
15. Skirts may look nice but they are _____. (practice)

III. Give correct form or tense of the verb.

16. If he (be) _____ lucky, he can get the job.
17. The national anthem (sing) _____ by all the students at this time.
18. My brother and sister (play) _____ tennis at 11am yesterday.
19. Have a good time when you (go) _____ to Paris next week.
20. I'm really looking forward to (take) _____ a vacation!

IV. Choose the underlined word or phrase that needs correcting.

21. That lovely picture was drew by my eight-year-old brother.
 A B C D
22. I'm glad to hear that you speak English very good.
 A B C D
23. Jane promised she will drive me to the station the next day.

24. I'm sorry I really don't know where does she live now.
 A B C D
25. He delayed telling her the news, waited for the right moment.
 A B C D

V. Choose the one option that best completes the passage.

We don't only choose clothes to make us look (26) _____. We use them to tell the world (27) _____ our personality. The clothes we wear and our (28) _____ as a whole give other people useful information about what we think and (29) _____ we feel. If we feel cheerful, we usually wear colorful clothes and if we feel depressed we sometimes (30) _____ on dark clothes. But why do teenagers wear black so (31) _____? Is it because they feel miserable (32) _____? This is unlikely to be the case. It is probably just because it is (33) _____ to wear black, and young people are real fan of fashion.

26. a. attracting b. attractive c. attractively d. attraction
 27. a. of b. to c. about d. from
 28. a. appeal b. appealing c. appearing d. appearance
 29. a. how b. what c. which d. when
 30. a. take b. get c. put d. set
 31. a. mostly b. frequently c. mainly d. occasionally
 32. a. in any way b. as a result c. on the whole d. all the time
 33. a. fashionable b. beautiful c. impressive d. convenient

VI. Read the passage carefully, then decide whether the following statements are true (T) or false (F).

English is the second most commonly spoken, and by far the most widespread of the world's languages. It is estimated that there are 350 million native speakers, 300 million who use English as a second language and a further billion using it as a foreign language. English is spoken by scientists, pilots, computer experts, diplomats and tourists; it is the language of the world! Did you know over 50% of all business deals are conducted in English? And over 70% of all mail is written and addressed in English? It is the official or co-official language of over 50 countries and furthermore, it is spoken extensively in other countries where it has no official status. It is perhaps, therefore, not surprising that in recent years we have seen a dramatic increase in the number of students opting to study abroad. In the future this will cement the role that English plays in the cultural, political or economic life of many countries around the world from Australia to Zambia.

34. English is the most widely used language in the world.
 35. It is estimated that 300 million people speak English as a first language.
 36. Up to half of all business deals are conducted in English.
 37. Three quarters of the world's mail is written in English.
 38. English will not be the global language in the future.

VII. Rewrite the sentences.

39. Promise to try harder or I won't help you.

If you _____

40. I haven't done any gardening for three months.

The last time _____

41. It's a pity I don't know her phone number.

I wish _____

42. She has to finish the report today.

The report _____

43. I'm leaving for Ha Noi tomorrow,' Jane said to me.

Jane told _____

TEST 3

I.

1. c 2. b 3. a 4. c 5. d 6. b 7. d 8. c 9. d 10. b

II.

11. advertisement

14. poets

12. qualifications

15. impractical

13. national

III.

16. is

19. go

17. is being sung

20. taking

18. were playing

IV.

21. B (was drawn)

24. D (she lives)

22. D (well)

25. C (waiting)

23. B (would drive)

V.

26. b 27. c 28. d 29. a 30. c 31. b 32. d

VI.

34. T 35. F 36. T 37. T 38. F

VII.

39. If you don't promise to try harder, I won't help you.

40. The last time I did gardening was three months ago.

41. I wish I knew her phone number.

42. The report has to be finished today.

43. Jane told me she was leaving for Ha Noi the next day/ the following day.

TEST 4

I. Choose the best answer to complete the sentence.

1. Did you use to go to church _____ Sundays?
a. for b. in c. at d. on
2. They rushed to the hospital, _____ they were too late.
a. but b. so c. or d. therefore
3. She strongly advised me _____ that job.
a. not take b. not to take c. to not take d. not taking
4. Are you keen _____ playing badminton?
a. in b. at c. on d. with
5. The disadvantage of the material is that it _____ in strong sunlight.
a. wears out b. looses c. fades d. tightens
6. He'll never pass the test _____ he works much harder.
a. unless b. if c. when d. as long as
7. Where is Tom? He said he be here at 5 pm.
a. should b. must c. would d. could
8. Times have changed and so _____.
a. I do b. do I c. I have d. have I
9. The sign at the _____ to that area says 'No Unauthorized Entry'
a. access b. enter c. place d. entrance
10. 'Why don't we go to the National Museum?' '_____.'
a. Certainly b. Please do c. Good idea d. No problem

II. Give correct form of the word.

11. The company enjoys a world-wide _____ for quality of design (repute)
12. Her words were a great _____ to them (encourage)
13. We take a lot of _____ in our work (proud)
14. Some designers have _____ the Ao Dai by printing lines of poetry on it. (modern)
15. Students should aim to become more _____ of their teachers (depend)

III. Save correct form or tense of the verb.

16. Most of us enjoy (go) _____ to the sea in summer.
17. I wish my sister (not talk) _____ so much. She's annoying.
18. I'll give her the message as soon as she (come) _____ back tomorrow.
19. This chair is broken. It needs (mend) _____.
20. The walls (not paint) _____ yet.

IV. Choose the underlined word or phrase that needs correcting.

21. They arrived at Ha Noi at 5.30 in the evening.
A B C D
22. It rained hard while I slept soundly last night.
A B C D
23. When our mother was sick, we took turns to look after her very careful.

24. Either her uncle or her cousins is coming to pick her up tonight.

25. The man was too tired that he could scarcely walk.

V. Fill in each numbered blank with a word from the box.

clothes	down	pride	uniforms
displaying	main	entirely	disadvantages

The great debate continues about should students have to wear school (26) _____? There is no definitive answer as it (27) _____ depends upon the person's beliefs. There are benefits for some children who wear uniforms and (28) _____ to others.

The (29) _____ reason schools in America choose not to allow their students to wear their own (30) _____ is because of the gangs. Having a uniform stops gang members from (31) _____ their colours and garb. The schools also believe it helps stop violence and helps instill a sense of (32) _____ in the students. It also helps to break (33) _____ the barriers between different socioeconomic groups.

- debate (n): cuộc tranh luận - socioeconomic (adj): kinh tế xã hội

VI. Read the passage carefully, then answer the questions.

During the last Christmas holidays, a group of my classmates decided to have an excursion to Johore Bahru.

We left early in the morning by the first Singapore - Johore express bus and reach the customs check-points half an hour later. From the customs we went by a chartered van to the Johore Bahru seaside. As it was clear sunny day we decided to have a dip in the water. For nearly an hour we enjoyed the bath much to our satisfaction.

By the time our sea-bath was over. It was about 9 a.m and we had an appetizing breakfast, with sandwiches, cakes and coffee which we carried along with us. Then we relaxed under a shady tree for a while. Later we visited the zoo. We had some fun there with the monkeys in cages. Then we went round the tour for sightseeing. By the time our sightseeing was over it was about 1 p.m. We had a hearty lunch of chicken rice and returned home by bus.

34. Where did the writer and her classmates decide to go to?

35. How long did it take to get to the customs check-points?

36. What was the weather like?

37. What did they have for breakfast?

38. What did they do after leaving the zoo?

VII. Rewrite the sentences.

39. 'Could you show me the photos?' she said to me.

She asked me _____

40. They are building a supermarket in our neighborhood.

A supermarket _____

41. They started working in that factory over ten years ago.

They have _____

42. It's a pity Sarah isn't here now.

I wish _____

TEST 4

I

1. d 2. a 3. b 4. c 5. c 6. a 7. c 8. d 9. d 10. c

II.

11. reputation
12. encouragement
13. pride

14. modernized
15. independent

III.

16. going
17. didn't talk
18. comes

19. mending
20. haven't been painted

IV.

21. B (in)
22. C (was sleeping)
23. D (carefully)

24. C (are coming)
25. A (so)

V.

26. uniforms	28. disadvantages	30. clothes	32. pride
27. entirely	29. main	31. displaying	33. down

VI.

34. They decided to go to Johore Bahru.
35. It took half an hour (to get to the customs check-points).
36. The weather was clear and sunny.
37. They had sandwiches, cakes and coffee for breakfast.
38. After leaving the zoo, they went on a sightseeing tour.

VII.

39. She asked me to show her the photos.
40. A supermarket is being built in our neighborhood.
41. They have been working/ have worked in that factory for over ten years.
42. I wish Sarah was/ were here now.

TEST 5

I. Choose the best answer to complete the sentence.

1. She named her daughter _____ her grandmother.
a. by b. for c. in d. after
2. The meeting will be _____ Tuesday _____ 9 am and 11 am.
a. on - between b. on - at c. in - at d. in - between
3. Everyone felt tired _____ they took a break.
a. because b. although c. so d. but
4. Many of his most famous poems are _____ by the natural world.
a. completed b. composed c. instructed d. inspired
5. Shut the door, _____?
a. do you b. will you c. are you d. don't you
6. You _____ practice speaking English regularly if you want to improve your pronunciation.
a. should b. can c. might d. will
7. We spoke quietly _____ the baby up.
a. in order to not wake b. so as not to wake
c. so that not wake d. in order that we don't wake
8. You are not half _____ you think you are.
a. as clever than b. as clever like c. as clever as d. clever than
9. Nobody can deny the _____ of the Internet in our everyday life.
a. comforts b. interests c. purposes d. benefits
10. 'Have some more cake?' ' _____ I'm too full.'
a. yes, please b. No, thanks c. I'd love to d. Never mind

II. Give correct form of the word.

11. We found the trip to the countryside _____. (excite)
12. The Internet is useful but it has its _____. (limit)
13. Van Cao is one of the most well-known _____. (music)
14. Games can make learning more _____. (enjoy)
15. The terrorists issued a _____ of responsibility for the attack, (deny)

III. Give correct form or tense of the verb.

16. Jane (send) _____ me a lot of letters since last year.
17. My parents always let me (do) _____ what I think I should.
18. We are going to have our house (paint) _____ next week.
19. Lan hates (write) _____ letters. She can never think what to write.
20. Before World War II jeans (only/wear) _____ in America's Western states.

IV. Choose the underlined word or phrase that needs correcting.

21. The police are still questioning witnesses and gathering informations.
A B C D
22. Please give him this letter when he will come back this afternoon.

TEST 5

I

1. d 2. a 3. c 4. d 5. b 6. a 7. b 8. c 9. d 10. b

II.

11. exciting	13. musicians	15. denial
12. limitations	14. enjoyable	

III.

16. has sent	18. painted	20. Were only worn
17. do	19. writing	

IV.

21. D (information)	24. B (forgetting)
22. C (comes)	25. A (it)
23. A (must be kept)	

V.

26. c 27. d 28. a 29. b 30. c 31. a 32. c 33. b

VI.

34. T 35. F 36. T 37. F 38. T

VII.

39. While I was writing, the phone rang./ The phone rang while I was writing.
40. We didn't use to wear uniforms when we were in secondary school.
41. Have you finished fixing the car yet?
42. Bill enjoys surfing the net, so he spends hours every day wandering the websites.

TEST 6

I. Choose the best answer to complete the sentence.

1. Let's wait _____ the rain stops, then we'll start.
a. when b. before c. untill d. during
2. He had worked _____ the farm all his life.
a. in b. on c. at d. to
3. The first electronic computer was _____ by John Vincent Ansoff.
a. explored b. discovered c. inspired d. invented
4. Do you have _____ work to do this afternoon?
a. many b. much c. a few d. some
5. You went to the movies alone last night. _____?
a. do you b. don't you c. did you d. didn't you
6. It's a bit cold outside. We'd better _____ our coat.
a. to take off b. not to take off c. not take off d. take off
7. Islamic people worship in a _____.
a. church b. mosque c. pagoda d. temple
8. I asked _____ she had any letters for me.
a. when b. which c. why d. whether
9. Cars, buses, bikes, etc. _____ stop when the traffic light is red.
a. must b. can c. may d. need
10. 'Do you mind waiting a few minutes?' '_____.'
a. Don't worry b. Never mind c. I hope not d. Not at all

II. Give correct form of the word.

11. The old lady made herself _____ in a big armchair (comfort)
12. He gets angry if you _____ with his idea (agree)
13. For most people a good _____ helps them get a better job. (educate)
14. It's _____ trying to talk to her because she never listens (use)
15. Yesterday, my friend _____ visited me. I was surprised to see her. (expect)

III. Give correct form or tense of the verb.

16. Linguistics (be) _____ one of my favorite subjects.
17. This book (publish) _____ twenty years ago.
18. My father used (play) _____ a lot of tennis when he was younger.
19. _____ you (ever/ eat) _____ French food?
20. My little brother dislikes (have) _____ his hair _____ (brush).

IV. Choose the underlined word or phrase that needs correcting.

21. You shouldn't waste your time to surf the web so frequently.
A B C D
22. There is fewer rainfall in Viet Nam this year than the previous one.
A B C D
23. He studied very hard, so he passed the exam easy.

24. They had all the carpets cleaned, hadn't they?
 A B C D
25. I went to the library to get as many information as I could.
 A B C D

V. Choose the one option that best completes the passage.

The most popular and widely-recognized Vietnamese national (26) _____ is ao dai, which (27) _____ nowadays mostly by women, although men do wear ao dai (28) _____ special occasions such as weddings and funerals. Ao dai is similar to the Chinese Qipao, (29) _____ of a long gown with a (30) _____ on both sides, worn over silk pants. It is elegant in style and (31) _____ to wear. Ao dai is made (32) _____ in many senior high schools in Vietnam, and some colleges. Some female office workers (e.g. receptionists, secretaries, tour guides) are also (33) _____ to wear ao dai.

- | | | | |
|------------------|----------------|----------------|---------------|
| 26. a. costume | b. material | c. design | d. pattern |
| 27. a. wears | b. is wearing | c. is worn | d. has worn |
| 28. a. in | b. on | c. at | d. for |
| 29. a. including | b. adding | c. consisting | d. comprising |
| 30. a. stripe | b. cross | c. label | d. slit |
| 31. a. comfort | b. comfortable | c. comfortably | d. comforting |
| 32. a. possible | b. convenient | c. compulsory | d. suitable |
| 33. a. required | b. allowed | c. wondered | d. persuaded |

VI. Read the passage carefully, then choose the correct answer.

Have you ever noticed advertisements which say “Learn a foreign language in 6 weeks, or your money back! From the first day your pronunciation will be excellent. Just send...” and so on? Of course, it never happens quite like that. The only language that is easy to learn is one’s mother tongue. And think how much practice that gets!

In the past people usually learnt a foreign language in order to read the literature of the country. Now speaking a foreign language is what most people want. Every year millions of people start learning one. How do they do it? Some people try at home, with books and records of tapes; some use radio or television programmes; some use computers and network; others go to evening classes. If they use the language only 2 or 3 times a week, learning it will take a long time, like learning a foreign language at school. A few people try to learn a language fast by studying for 6 or more hours a day. It is clearly easier to learn the language in the country where it is spoken. However, most people cannot afford this, and for many it is not necessary. They need the language in order to do their work better. For example, scientists and doctors chiefly need to be able to read books and reports in the foreign language. Whether the language is learnt quickly or slowly, it is hard work. Machines and good books will help, but they cannot do the student’s work for him.

34. According to some advertisements, if you cannot master a foreign language in 6 weeks you _____.
- | | |
|---------------------------|----------------------------|
| a. can get your fees back | b. have to pay more money |
| c. must pay your fees | d. will be paid some money |
35. Nowadays, most people want to be able _____.

- a. to read the literature of a foreign country
 - b. to speak a foreign language
 - c. to learn a foreign language fast
 - d. to study a foreign language at home
36. The best way to learn a foreign language is _____.
- a. to listen to records and tapes
 - b. to go to evening classes
 - c. to look for online language courses
 - d. to live in the country where the language is spoken
37. Many people try to learn a foreign language in order to _____.
- a. work in a foreign country
 - b. read books and reports
 - c. do their work better
 - d. study abroad
38. Which of the following is NOT true?
- a. Learning a foreign language is not easy.
 - b. You can learn a foreign language on your own.
 - c. Most people don't have enough money to study a language abroad.
 - d. Machines and books are useless in language learning.

VII. Rewrite the sentences.

39. Jane loves playing tennis and golf.

Jane is _____

40. How often do you come to New York?'

She asked me _____

41. We got to the meeting late because of the very bad traffic.

The traffic was _____

42. When did you start working here?

How long _____

ĐÁP ÁN
TEST 6

I

1. c 2. b 3. d 4. b 5. d 6. c 7. b 8. d 9. a 10. d

II.

11. comfortable	13. education	15. unexpectedly
12. disagree	14. useless	

III.

16. is	18. to play	20. having - brushed
17. was published	19. Have ... ever eaten	

IV.

21. C (surfing)	24. D (didn't they)
22. B (less)	25. B (as much)
23. D (easily)	

V.

26. a 27. c 28. b 29. c 30. d 31. b 32. c 33. a

VI.

34. a 35. b 36. d 37. c 38. d

VII.

39. Jane is interested in playing tennis and golf.
40. She asked me how often I came to New York.
41. The traffic was very bad, so we got to the meeting late.
42. How long have you been working / have you worked here?

TEST 7

I. Choose the best answer to complete the sentence.

1. Have you read the article _____ *Time* magazine _____ Google?
a. on - by b. in - on c. in - at d. at - on
2. I am tired _____ doing grammar exercises.
a. on b. for c. of d. in
3. Your son looks _____ than mine.
a. much tall b. more tall c. more taller d. much taller
4. do you _____ exercise? ~ About four times a week.
a. How often b. How far c. How long d. How much
5. I looked everywhere for the book, but I _____ find it.
a. mustn't b. needn't c. couldn't d. mightn't
6. He searched the _____ for three hours for the information about cancer.
a. television b. Internet c. computer d. newspaper
7. I was going to write to you, _____ I lost your address.
a. and b. so c. though d. but
8. Internet users sometimes have to suffer various risks, _____?
a. haven't they b. aren't they c. don't they d. won't they
9. She asked me what aspect of learning English _____ most difficult.
a. I find b. do I find c. I found d. did I find
10. 'Congratulations on your exam result!' ' _____',
a. You're welcome, b. Thanks a lot. c. All right. d. That's good.

II. Give correct form of the word.

11. Alexander G. Bell was a famous _____. (invent)
12. The _____ growth may slow to 5.3 percent this year (improve)
13. English spelling presents special _____ for learners (difficult)
14. The lighting of the Olympic torch _____ peace and friendship (symbol)
15. We laughed at the _____ of her dirty face (see)

III. Give correct form or tense of the verb.

16. If she earns a lot of money, she (fly) _____ to New York.
17. Listen! They (talk) _____ about Harry Potter. Let's join them.
18. My father's used to (read) _____ the paper while having breakfast.
19. Must this test (finish) _____ on time?
20. I'm sorry, I forgot (post) _____ your letter.

IV. Choose the underlined word or phrase that needs correcting.

21. If you answer all my questions, I can't do anything to help you.
A B C D
22. On weekends, they enjoy hiking, sailing and ride horseback.
A B C D
23. They went out after turn off all the lights.

24. The taxi driver told me that he would take me to this hotel.

25. The child wasn't enough strong to lift his heavy rucksack.

V. Fill in each numbered blank with a word from the box.

separated	majority	climate	forming
population	nation	official	located

Singapore, officially the Republic of Singapore, is an island city-state (26) _____ at the southern tip of the Malay Peninsula. An island country made up of 63 islands, it is (27) _____ from Malaysia by the Straits of Johor to its north and from Indonesia's Riau Islands by the Singapore Strait to its south. At 712 km², Singapore is a microstate and the smallest (28) _____ in Southeast Asia.

Singapore has a tropical rainforest (29) _____ with no distinctive seasons. The (30) _____ of Singapore including non-residents is approximately 4.99 million. It is highly diverse; the (31) _____ are Chinese with almost 75% of the total population, while Malays and Indians (32) _____ significant minorities. Reflecting this diversity, the country has four (33) _____ languages: English, Malay, Chinese, and Tamil.

- city-state (n): thành phố có chủ quyền như một nước

VI. Read the passage carefully, then answer the questions.

For you, a cell phone is probably just a device that you or your friends use to keep in touch with family and friends, take pictures, play games, or send text messages. The definition of a cell phone is more specific: it is a hand-held wireless communication device that sends and receives signals by way of small special areas called cells.

In 1973, an electronic company called Motorola hired Martin Cooper to work on wireless communication. Motorola and Bell Laboratories (now AT&T) were in a race to invent the first portable communication device. Martin Cooper won the race and became the inventor of the cell phone. On April 3, 1973, Cooper made the first cell phone call to his opponent at AT&T while walking down the streets of New York City. People on the sidewalks gazed at Cooper in amazement as he walked down the street talking on his cellular phone. Cooper's phone was called a Motorola Dyna-Tac. It weighed a whopping 2 1/2 pounds (as compared to today's cell phones that weigh as little as 3 or 4 ounces). After the invention of his cell phone, Cooper began thinking of ways to make the cell phone available to the general public. After ten years, Motorola introduced the first cell phones for commercial use.

34. What is a cell phone?

35. Who invented the cell phone and for what company did he work?

36. In what year was the cell phone invented?

37. How did people react to Martin Cooper as he talked on his cell phone while walking down the streets of New York?

38. How does the size of the first cell phone compare with the size of today's cell phones?

VII. Rewrite the sentences.

39. Hoa hasn't written to her pen pal for five months.

Hoa last _____

40. He is too young to work.

He isn't _____

41. My father used to take me to school every day.

I _____

42. Why don't we spend our weekend on the farm?

I suggested _____

TEST 7

I.

1. b 2. c 3. d 4. a 5. c 6. b 7. d 8. c 9. c 10. b

II.

11. inventor	13. difficulty	15. sight
12. economic	14. symbolizes	

III.

16. will fly/ can fly	18. reading	20. to post
17. are talking	19. be finished	

IV.

21. A (Unless)	23. B (turning)	25. B (strong enough)
22. D (riding)	24. D (that/the)	

V.

26. located	28. nation	30. population	32. forming
27. separated	29. climate	31. majority	33. official

VI.

34. A cell phone is a wireless communication device that sends and receives signals by way of small special area called cells.

35. Martin Cooper invented the cell phone while working for Motorola.

36. The cell phone was invented in 1973.

37. People gazed at him in amazement.

38. The first cell phone weighed a whopping 2/6 pounds, while today's phone weigh as little as three ounces.

VII.

39. Hoa last wrote to her pen pal five months ago.

40. He isn't old enough to work.

41. I used to be taken to school by my father every day.

42. I suggested spending our weekend on the farm./ I suggested (that) we should spend our weekend on the farm.

TEST 8

I. Choose the best answer to complete the sentence.

1. Nowadays, more and more people are shopping _____ the Internet.
a. by b. from c. in d. on
2. Thanks _____ your help, we were successful.
a. to b. for c. with d. of
3. I'm late for the meeting, _____?
a. amn't I b. am I c. aren't I d. don't I
4. How much time do you _____ learning English every day?
a. spend b. take c. pay d. waste
5. _____ we've known each other for a long ftime, we're not close friends.
a. Because b. Although c. Since d. Despite
6. _____ we go by bus or by train, it'll take at least six hours.
a. While b. Unless c. When d. Whether
7. If you do exercise regularly, you _____ lose weight.
a. should b. must c. might d. ought to
8. I read an interesting _____ in the newspaper about young fashion designers.
a. article b. advertisement c. description d. response
9. 'Are you leaving?' ~ 'Yes, but I wish I _____ go.'
a. don't have to b. didn't have to
c. won't have to d. needn't have to
10. ' _____ ' 'Oh, thank you, that would be great.'
a. May I come in? b. Why not go out for dinner?
c. What's wrong with you? d. Would you like a cup of coffee?

II. Give correct form of the word.

11. In the 1960s, many university and college _____ wore jeans (study)
12. They visit _____ temples several times every year (religion)
13. Reading books can widen your _____ of this wonderful world (know)
14. This book is very _____ and useful for your research (inform)
15. The lion cub cries out _____ for help (pity)

III. Give correct form ©r tense of the verb.

16. When we saw John, we (stop) _____ to say hello to him.
17. They (offer) _____ you the job if you can use the computer.
18. We listened carefully while they (explain) _____ the plan to us.
19. Arabic (speak) _____ by the people of Syria and Iraq.
20. The team was made (practice) _____ - _____ every day last week.

IV. Choose the underlined word or phrase that needs correcting.

21. He used to walking along the beach every evening before bed.
A B C D
22. Do you think English is a language which can master easily and quickly?

23. Texas is larger than California, but it has fewer people as California does.

24. I am writing in respond to your letter of June 12.

25. Whatever happened, I didn't want to lose friendship of Vera.

V. Choose the one option that best completes the passage.

Traditional pen pals can be a very good (26) _____ to motivate children to write. Children (27) _____ information about themselves, their family, favorite things, interests, hobbies, etc. An ongoing pen pal relationship can help children learn about (28) _____. The use of the postal service in a pen pal relationship allows children to exchange photos, coins, and other small items which are (29) _____ to children. Further, children often enjoy looking at the stamps and letters (30) _____ come from other places. Finally, writing "paper" letters provides children with a real reason to learn parts of a letter and (31) _____ to address an envelope.

The reading, writing, and learning (32) _____ of having children write to pen pals are great. But, perhaps, the (33) _____ benefit of all is that children are so motivated to write to real people about topics of real interest when they get real mail back!

- | | | | |
|-----------------|---------------|------------------|------------------|
| 26. a. way | b. area | c. aspect | d. skill |
| 27. a. find | b. divide | c. share | d. gain |
| 28. a. together | b. other | c. every other | d. each other |
| 29. a. interest | b. interested | c. interesting | d. interestingly |
| 30. a. they | b. that | c. these | d. those |
| 31. a. how | b. when | c. what | d. why |
| 32. a. comforts | b. advances | c. disadvantages | d. benefits |
| 33. a. largest | b. greatest | c. strongest | d. smallest |

VI. Read the passage carefully, then decide whether the following statements are true (T) or false (F).

Reading in English is like reading in your native language. This means that it is not always necessary to read and understand each and every word in English. Remember that reading skills in your native language and English are basically the same. Here is a quick overview of the four types of reading skills used in every language:

- Skimming is used to quickly gather the most important information or 'gist'.
 - Scanning is used to find a particular piece of information.
 - Extensive reading is used to obtain a general understanding of a subject and includes reading longer texts for pleasure.
 - Intensive reading is used on shorter texts in order to extract specific information.
34. It's necessary to read every word in every document in your native language.
35. Reading skills in your native language and English are similar.
36. Skimming is used to understand the gist.
37. Intensive reading is used to get a general idea.

38. Use extensive reading skill when reading a novel in your free time.

VII. Rewrite the sentences.

39. I/ not see/ Jane/ since/ leave/ high school

40. They/ ask/ him/ if/ continue/ play/ that game

41. wear/ uniforms/ encourage/ students/ proud/ their school

42. I/ be/ surprised/ receive/ letter/ Jane/ this morning

**ĐÁP ÁN
TEST 8**

I.

1. d 2. a 3. c 4. a 5. b 6. d 7. c 8. a 9. b 10. d

II.

11. students	14. informative
12. religious	15. pitifully
13. knowledge	

III.

16. stopped	19. is spoken
17. will offer	20. to practice
18. were explaining	

IV.

21. A (to walk)	24. B (response)
22. C (be mastered)	25. D (with)
23. C (than)	

V.

26. a 27. c 28. d 29. c 30. b 31. a 32. d 33. b

VI.

34. F 35. T 36. T 37. F 38. T

VII.

39. I haven't seen Jane since we left high school.
40. They asked him if he continued to play/ playing that game.
41. Wearing uniforms encourages students to be proud of their school.
42. I was surprised to receive a letter from Jane this morning.

TEST 9

I. Choose the best answer to complete the sentence.

1. Nowadays, Vietnamese women often wear *áo dài* _____ special occasions.
a. in b. at c. on d. by
2. Don't forget to brush your teeth _____ you go to bed.
a. before b. after c. until d. up to
3. We all wish him _____ when he decided to enter the contest.
a. congratulation b. good luck c. a happy day d. enjoy himself
4. If you wear the jeans too frequently, they will _____ faster.
a. go out b. come out c. run out d. wear out
5. That's the shop where you bought your sandals, _____?
a. is it b. isn't it c. is that d. isn't that
6. I _____ up early in the morning. It doesn't bother me.
a. used to wake b. didn't use to wake
c. am used to waking d. am not used to waking
7. The examination is coming, _____ we are very busy.
a. because b. so c. though d. but
8. This _____ can provide US with all the definitions we need to know.
a. newspaper b. textbook c. dictionary d. magazine
9. I haven't done the homework and John hasn't _____.
a. too b. so c. neither d. either
10. 'Oh, no! I left my book at home. Can I share yours?' '_____,'
a. Not at all. b. Yes, I do too. c. Yes, sure. d. No, thanks.

II. Give correct form of the word.

11. Education in many countries is _____ until the age of 16. (compel)
12. English is _____ spoken by people all over the world (wide)
13. The _____ of jeans seem unlikely to decline (popular)
14. Our teaching staff are all highly _____. (qualify)
15. We should never _____ injustice (tolerance)

III. Give correct form or tense of the verb.

16. My family (move) _____ to HCM City twenty years ago.
17. I have three days off next week. I (visit) _____ my grandparents.
18. It's no use (ask) _____ him to help you with your homework.
19. Valerie decided (grow) _____ a garden this year.
20. This is the first time Mary (drive) _____ to New York herself.

IV. Choose the underlined word or phrase that needs correcting.

21. My mother didn't used to like the Internet, but now she does.
A B C D
22. I think I have more work to do tonight than you have.

c. their expression

c. their meaning

36. Native speakers _____.

a. have the same accent

b. have a wide range of accents

c. speak English with a strong accent

d. speak heavily accented English

37. Idiom and slang expressions are _____.

a. different from area to area

b. not difficult to learn

c. dependent on the speakers

d. widely used in English

38. The writer finds it hard to distinguish _____.

a. vowel sounds

b. familiar sounds

c. soft sounds

d. strange sounds

VII. Rewrite the sentences.

39. Would you please wash the dishes?

Would you mind _____

40. She has been working for this company since 1977.

She started _____

41. Mike doesn't cook as well as Barbara does.

Barbara _____

42. John plays basketball excellently.

John is _____

ĐÁP ÁN
TEST 9

I.

1. c 2. a 3. b 4. d 5. b 6. c 7. b 8. c 9. d 10. c

II.

11. compulsory	14. qualified
12. widely	15. tolerate
13. popularity	

III.

16. moved	19. to grow
17. am going to visit	20. has driven
18. asking	

IV.

21. A (didn't use)	24. A (says)
22. D (do)	25. B (not being)
23. B (cheerfully)	

V.

26. a 27. c 28. d 29. c 30. b 31. c 32. d 33. a

VI.

34. c 35. a 36. b 37. a 38. d

VII.

39. Would you mind washing the dishes?
40. She started working/ to work for this company in 1977.
41. Barbara cooks better than Mike (does).
42. John is an excellent basketball player.

TEST 10

I. Choose the best answer to complete the sentence.

1. Americans spent more than \$15 billion _____ jeans _____ 2005.
a. on - in b. in - since c. at - in d. for - in
2. Alex is interested _____ Electronics. He is good _____ fixing electronic things.
a. on - in b. in - for c. in - at d. in - on
3. I _____ this word up in the dictionary but I still don't understand it.
a. found b. looked c. brought d. got
4. We are going to stay here until you _____ your work
a. will finish b. are finished c. finished d. have finished
5. Vietnamese woman today often prefer to wear modern clothing at work _____ it is more convenient.
a. although b. however c. because d. moreover
6. The teacher will not punish him _____ he keeps on making noise.
a. unless b. if c. whether d. when
7. Will man _____ live forever one day?
a. can b. may c. could d. be able to
8. She asked me _____ I was looking at.
a. if b. when c. why d. what
9. Mobile phones are very popular now and they are than before.
a. more cheap b. much cheap c. much cheaper d. more cheaper
10. 'May I take a seat here?' ' _____ '
a. I'm not sure. b. Yes, please do. c. Good idea. d. You're welcome.

II. Give correct form of the word.

11. Blue jeans might be the popular _____ pants worldwide (fashion)
12. A trip to the country sounds _____. (wonder)
13. She tasted the spaghetti sauce _____ because it was very hot. (care)
14. His ability of learning languages was _____. (impress)
15. Parents are often _____ when their children don't obey them (disappoint)

III. Give correct form or tense of the verb.

16. Paper money (use) _____ for over a thousand years.
17. Fred has no difficulty (make) _____ friends with other students.
18. My brother likes music a lot. He always (listen) _____ to music while he (drive) _____.
19. He (study) _____ in Singapore as an exchange student at present.
20. You should practice (listen) _____ to English News on TV.

IV. Choose the underlined word or phrase that needs correcting.

21. My mother asked me not to spend too much time to play computer games.

A B C D

22. Did people used to get their news from the newspaper or the radio?

41. I was caught in a traffic jam, so I got to the meeting twenty minutes late.

Because of _____

42. I'll take the job unless the pay is too slow.

If _____

ĐÁP ÁN
TEST 10

I.

1. a 2. c 3. b 4. d 5. c 6. a 7. d 8. d 9. c 10. b

II.

11. fashionable	14. impressive
12. wonderful	15. disappointed
13. carefully	

III.

16. has been used	19. is studying
17. making	20. listening
18. listens - is driving	

IV.

21. D (playing)	24. D (relaxed)
22. B (use)	25. B (comfort)
23. B (for)	

V.

26. anti-social	29. messaging	32. free
27. closer	30. post	33. Everyone
28. contact	31. while	

VI.

34. Levi Strauss was born in German.
35. He intended to open a branch of his brother's New York dry goods business.
36. At first he used canvas to make pants.
37. Miners complained that the pants made of canvas tended to chafe.
38. Denim was used instead of canvas.

VII.

39. Anne asked Peter to put the box there.
40. You know how to use a computer, don't you?
41. Because of being caught in a traffic jam, I got to the meeting twenty minutes late.
42. If the pay isn't too slow. I'll take the job.

TEST 11

I. Choose the best answer to complete the sentence.

1. My family have lived in this town _____ 1989.
a. in b. from c. for d. since
2. Today young generation is still fond _____ wearing jeans.
a. on b. at c. of d. with
3. Students mustn't cheat in exam, _____?
a. do they b. must they c. mustn't they d. don't they
4. Each of the students _____ their own email address.
a. gave b. were given c. have given d. has given
5. The Amazon is _____ river in South America.
a. the longer b. most longest c. the longest d. the most longest
6. She got up early this morning _____ pack me some food for the journey.
a. so that b. in order to c. because of d. due to
7. The police asked him where _____ now.
a. he stays b. did he stay c. was he staying d. he was staying
8. Jeans are a very popular form of _____ clothes around the world.
a. casual b. formal c. plain d. traditional
9. Traditionally, ao dai was _____ worn by both men and women.
a. especially b. frequently c. recently d. exactly
10. 'Have you ever read this book?' ' _____ '
a. No, I read it last year. b. No, what's it about?
c. Neither have I. d. No, but I want to try.

II. Give correct form of the word.

11. When I was young I wanted to be a fashion _____. (design)
12. The Internet is a very useful means of _____. (communicate)
13. Lan enjoyed the _____ atmosphere in the mosque (peace)
14. The Internet has _____ developed and become part of our daily life (increase)
15. We can trust him because he is a _____ person (faith)

III. Give correct form or tense of the verb.

16. Nicole (not go) _____ on vacation next summer if she (not save) _____ enough money.
17. We wasted our money (go) _____ to that movie. It was very boring.
18. We (be) _____ to Ha Noi three times this year.
19. John was skiing when he (break) _____ his leg.
20. So far, over 40 people (kill) _____ by the H7N9 avian flu.

IV. Choose the underlined word or phrase that needs correcting.

21. We were surprising at how quickly she agreed.
A B C D
22. The rain was too heavy that they couldn't finish their tennis game.

23. A B C D
A hundred employees were questioning by the police officers.
24. A B C D
Would you like me helping you with your homework?
25. A B C D
Comparing to our small flat, Bill's house seemed like a palace.

V. Choose the one option that best completes the passage.

One of the biggest (26) _____ of using cell phones is that people are tempted to use them while driving. This causes a situation called "inattention blindness". Studies have shown that drivers (27) _____ use cell phones while driving were "blind" (because they did not pay attention) to roadside billboards, signs and other sources of important information around them. (28) _____ problems related to driving, there are other disadvantages to cell phones. Cell phones can be disruptive in places such as churches, theaters, schools, and other places where (29) _____ is needed. Perhaps more serious than damage to social relations, cell phones may have effects (30) _____ the health of their users. It has been found that cell phones (31) _____ radiation. Radiation can damage the cells in the body. Scientists believe that this radiation can cause changes in (32) _____ cells which can cause nausea, dizziness, depression, early memory (33) _____, and brain tumors.

- | | | | |
|-----------------------|------------------|-----------------|-------------------|
| 26. a. advantages | b. disadvantages | c. conveniences | d. inconveniences |
| 27. a. when | b. which | c. who | d. whose |
| 28. a. In addition to | b. Because of | c. Thanks to | d. In spite of |
| 29. a. loudness | b. liveliness | c. quietness | d. easiness |
| 30. a. to | b. on | c. for | d. with |
| 31. a. emit | b. throw | c. send | d. take |
| 32. a. blood | b. skin | c. muscle | d. brain |
| 33. a. lose | b. losing | c. loss | d. lost |

VI Read the passage carefully, then decide whether the following statements are true (T) or false (F).

Do you want to be able to speak English fluently? "Don't study grammar too much." This rule might sound strange to many students, but it is one of the most important rules. If you want to pass examinations, then study grammar. However, if you want to become fluent in English, then you should try to learn English without studying the grammar.

Studying grammar will only slow you down and confuse you. You will think about the rules when creating sentences instead of naturally saying a sentence like a native. Remember that only a small fraction of English speakers know more than 20% of all the grammar rules. However, they are fluent in English and can read, speak, listen, and communicate effectively.

Many students learn vocabulary and try to put many words together to create a proper sentence. It's amazing how many words some of students know, but they cannot create a proper sentence. The reason is because they didn't study phrases. If you know 1000 words, you might not be able to say one correct sentence. But if you know 1 phrase, you can make hundreds of correct sentences. Finally, when you know only a 1000 phrases, you will be almost a fluent English speaker.

- 34. You don't need to study too much grammar to speak fluent English.
- 35. It'll hurt your speaking if you focus on grammar rules.
- 36. Most English speakers know all grammar rules quite well.
- 37. You need to study as many as possible to be fluent in English.
- 38. Studying phrases will help you be fluent in speaking English.

VII. Use the following sets of words and phrases to write sentences.

- 39. I/ used/ live/ this house/ when/ young
- 40. We/just/ finish/ build/ new swimming pool
- 41. The children/ love/ take/ their grandparents' house/ weekends
- 42. If/ I/ enough/ money/ go/ the United States/ learn/ English

ĐÁP ÁN
TEST 11

I.

1. d 2. c 3. b 4. d 5. c 6. b 7. d 8. a 9. b 10. b

II.

11. designer

14. increasingly

12. communication

15. faithful

13. peaceful

III.

16. won't go - doesn't save

19. broke

17. going

20. have been killed

18. have been

IV.

21. D (playing)

24. C (to help)

22. B (use)

25. A (Compared)

23. B (for)

V.

26. b 27. c 28. a 29. c 30. b 31. a 32. d 33. c

VI.

34. T 35. T 36. F 37. F 38. T

VII.

39. I used to live in this house when I was young.

40. We have just finished building a new swimming pool.

41. The children love being/ to be taken to their grandparents' house on/ at weekends.

42. If I have enough money, I'll go to the United States to learn English.

TEST 12

I. Choose the best answer to complete the sentence.

1. Do you often go out _____ Saturday evenings?
a. in b. at c. on d. for
2. It's important _____ children to read as many book as possible.
a. for b. to c. of d. with
3. Jennifer will not be here for dinner tonight, _____?
a. will Jennifer b. will not she c. will she d. won't she
4. Poor Kevin! He doesn't know what _____.
a. he do b. to do c. is he doing d. for doing
5. The Internet is a very fast and convenient way for people to _____ information.
a. look b. get c. do d. make
6. He wants to join the club when he's _____.
a. too old b. so old c. enough old d. old enough
7. The Internet is dangerous _____ viruses and bad programs.
a. therefore b. however c. despite d. because of
8. Mai asked me _____ my English teacher looked like.
a. what b. how c. which d. why
9. She still wasn't very _____ and was so scared of everyone.
a. convenient b. confident c. confused d. shy
10. 'I've passed the examination.' '_____'
a. Congratulations! b. All right! c. Thanks a lot. d. Never mind.

II. Give correct form of the word.

11. Ho Chi Minh City is a busy _____ center in Viet Nam. (**commerce**)
12. Of Vietnam's many _____, Buddhism is the most popular (**religious**)
13. Vietnamese women now are _____ of wearing the ao dai as their _____ dress (**pride - tradition**)
14. She often listens to music for _____. (**relax**)
15. Children living in inner-city areas may be _____ disadvantaged (**educate**)

III. Give correct form or tense of the verb.

- 16 Have you finished (read) _____ the newspaper?
17. Everybody (shock) _____ by the terrible news yesterday.
18. I'm sleepy. I'd like (go) _____ home and take a nap.
19. What _____ you (do) _____ at nine o'clock yesterday morning?
20. As I (walk) _____ down the street I (see) Joe driving a Ferrari.

IV. Choose the underlined word or phrase that needs correcting.

21. There is a lot of ancient furnitures in our grandparents' house.

A B C D

22. The dentist told me be careful when brushing my teeth.

23. Quang has lived in London for five years, so he's used to drive on the left.

24. His brother is not interested in sports and neither he is.

25. American children did lesser well in math than their peers in Japan.

V. Choose the one option that best completes the passage.

In many secondary schools in Britain the wearing of school uniform is (26) _____. Some schools argue that there are many (27) _____ to this system. Most students don't agree (28) _____ school uniforms, however, for number of reasons. Firstly, when you (29) _____ wear the same clothes as everyone else you don't have a chance to develop personal taste in the way you (30) _____.

Moreover, you can always tell the people who come from poor home (31) _____ their uniforms are not as new or don't fit properly. Lastly, the main (32) _____ why most students don't like school uniforms is because most schools choose such horrible colors and styles that don't (33) _____ young people at all.

- | | | | |
|------------------|---------------|---------------|---------------|
| 26. a. compelled | b. compulsion | c. compulsive | d. compulsory |
| 27. a. risks | b. limits | c. advantages | d. pleasures |
| 28. a. with | b. over | c. in | d. for |
| 29. a. can | b. need | c. should | d. have to |
| 30. a. look | b. dress | c. view | d. think |
| 31. a. because | b. though | c. despite | d. due to |
| 32. a. purpose | b. point | c. reason | d. problem |
| 33. a. support | b. suit | c. design | d. respond |

VI. Read the passage carefully, then choose the correct answers.

For many people the language of the Internet is English. "World, Wide, Web: Three English Words" was the name of an article by Michael Specter in the New York Times a few years ago. The article went on to say: If you want to take full advantage of the Internet, there is only one real way to do it: learn English.'

In general, it is not difficult to learn to use Internet services. But although Internet services are rather easy to use, you will have considerable difficulties if you are not familiar with English. In fact, a good knowledge of English is one of the most important aspects that help you use the Internet.

Learning to use a new Internet service may take a few hours, a few days or some weeks, but it takes years to learn a language so that you can use it fluently and confidently. Of course, when you know some English, you can learn more just by using it on the Internet. But at least your English should be good enough to understand commonly used words and to know what to do on the Internet.

34. According to the article by Michael Specter, you should _____ to take full advantage of the Internet.
- | | |
|-----------------------|------------------|
| a. learn to type fast | c. learn English |
|-----------------------|------------------|

- c. learn to use the Internet services d. learn all the names of some websites
35. It _____ to learn to use Internet services.
- a. takes a very long time b. takes a few minutes
- c. is difficult d. is easy
36. Learning to use a language fluently and confidently may take _____.
- a. a few hours b. a few days
- c. a few weeks d. a few years
37. If you do not know English very well, you will _____ when using the Internet.
- a. be laughed at b. feel more comfortable
- c. have many difficulties d. waste a lot of time
38. Which of the following could be the best title for the passage?
- a. English and the Internet
- b. Ways to take full advantage of the Internet
- c. Practising your English on the Internet
- d. How to use Internet services

VII. Rewrite the sentences.

39. Run quickly or you may miss the train.

If you _____

40. Helen can play the piano better than Anne.

Anne can't _____

41. It was such a bitter coffee that I couldn't drink it.

The coffee was _____

42. "I spend two hours surfing the Net every evening," Mark said.

Mark said _____

ĐÁP ÁN
TEST 12

I.

1. c 2. a 3. c 4. b 5. b 6. d 7. d 8. a 9. b 10. a

II.

11. commercial

14. relaxation

12. religions

15. educationally

13. proud - traditional

III.

16. reading

19. were ... doing

17. was shocked

20. was walking - saw

18. to go

IV.

21. B (furniture)

23. D (to driving)

25. A (less)

22. B (to be)

24. D (is he)

V.

26. d 27. c 28. a 29. d 30. b 31. a 32. c 33. b

VI.

34. b 35. d 36. d 37. c 38. a

VII.

39. If you don't run quickly, you may miss the train.

40. Anne can't play the piano as well as Helen.

41. The coffee was so bitter that I couldn't drink it.

42. Mark said that he spent two hours surfing the Net every evening.

TEST 13

I. Choose the best answer to complete the sentence.

1. Polluted water can directly do harm _____ people's health.
a. for b. on c. to d. over
2. There have been many changes around here _____ I was a boy.
a. during b. since c. while d. when
3. Unless we water some day our water resources, there will be _____ a shortage of clean
a. waste b. use c. conserve d. replace
4. The man _____ wrote this book had a fascinating life.
a. who b. which c. whose d. whom
5. I have been working hard on my English _____ it is not any better.
a. but b. so c. or d. and
6. John drives _____ than Peter does.
a. much carefully b. as carefully c. more carefully d. more careful
7. Jane together with her friends _____ our trip.
a. are joined b. were joining c. have joined d. is going to join
8. you help _____ me, I won't be able to finish my work on time.
a. If b. Unless c. Since d. Although
9. Peter suggested _____ everything again.
a. us to check b. we will check c. us check d. we should check
10. 'What a beautiful dress!' ' _____ '
a. It's nice of you to say so b. I bought it at Harod's Shop
c. I'm glad to hear that d. It doesn't cost much

II. Give correct form of the word.

11. My brother has a big _____ of foreign coins (collect)
12. _____ pollution is a serious problem today (environment)
13. Everyone must take part in preventing _____. (deforest)
14. To Edward's great _____, Gina never turned up at the party (disappoint)
15. The child spoke _____ about her trip to Disneyland (energy)

III. Give correct form or tense of the verb.

16. If he studied harder, he (pass) _____ the entrance exam.
17. All buildings in Sweden (heat) _____ by solar energy in 2015.
18. It's a high time you (begin) _____ to study seriously.
19. Ms Mi suggested (take) _____ showers to save water.
20. I was pleased (hear) _____ you've been promoted.

IV. Choose the underlined word or phrase that needs correcting.

21. Even though the bad weather, they decided not to cancel their trip.
A B C D

22. We are really looking forward to see you again next summer.

A B C D

23. The computer, the marvel of the machine age, was in use since 1946.

A B C D

24. Because the last question was rather difficult, so many students could not.

A B C

answer it

D

25. Why waste time to go to the bank when you can do it all over the Internet?

A B C D

V. Choose the one option that best completes the passage.

Tet is the most important traditional (26) _____ in Vietnam. It (27) _____ from the first day of the first month of the Lunar calendar (around late January or early February) until at least the third day. Many Vietnamese people (28) _____ for Tet by cooking special holiday foods and cleaning the house. There are a lot of (29) _____ practiced during Tet, like visiting a person's house on the first day of the new year, ancestral worshipping, wishing New Year's greetings, and giving (30) _____ money to children and elderly people. Tet is (31) _____ an occasion for pilgrims and family reunions. (32) _____ Tet, Vietnamese visit their relatives and temples, forgetting about the troubles of the past year and (33) _____ for a better upcoming year.

- | | | | |
|-------------------|----------------|---------------|---------------|
| 26. a. contest | b. parade | c. festival | d. meeting |
| 27. a. takes turn | b. takes place | c. takes part | d. takes back |
| 28. a. prepare | b. control | c. describe | d. collect |
| 29. a. cultures | b. beliefs | c. hobbies | d. customs |
| 30. a. hopeful | b. lucky | c. happy | d. funny |
| 31. a. even | b. so | c. also | d. ever |
| 32. a. During | b. In | c. For | d. Since |
| 33. a. watching | b. missing | c. enjoying | d. hoping |

VI. Read the passage carefully, then decide whether the following statements are true (T) or false (F).

Tet 7.0 magnitude earthquake struck Haiti just before 5p.m. on 12 January 2010, about 10 miles southwest of Port-au-Prince, the country's capital. The quake was the worst in the region in more than 200 years. An estimated three million people were affected by the quake. The Haitian Government reported that an estimated 230,000 people had died, 300,000 had been injured and 1,000,000 made homeless.

Most of Port-au-Prince's major landmarks were significantly damaged or destroyed in the earthquake, including the Presidential Palace, the National Assembly building, the Port-au-Prince Cathedral, and the main jail. All hospitals were destroyed or so badly damaged that they have been abandoned. The day after the quake, Haiti's president, René Preval, called the destruction "unimaginable."

34. On 12 January 2010, Haiti was struck by a very strong earthquake.

35. The earthquake hit Haiti at five in the morning.

36. The earthquake caused severe damage to Port-au-Prince.
37. Hundreds of thousands of people were killed in the earthquake.
38. The 2010 quake is the strongest to hit the region in more than a century.

VII. Rewrite the sentences.

39. 'Why don't we use energy-saving bulbs to save electricity?' An said.

An suggested that energy-saving bulbs _____

40. My father suggested going out for a meal.

My father said, 'Shall _____',

41. My sister watches more TV than me.

I don't _____

42. If I finish my homework, I can go out at the weekend.

Unless _____

ĐÁP ÁN
TEST 13

I.

1. c 2. b 3. c 4. a 5. a 6. c 7. d 8. b 9. d 10. a

II.

11. collection	14. disappointed
12. environmental	15. energetically
13. deforestation	

III.

16. would pass	19. taking
17. will be heated	20. to hear
18. began	

IV.

21. A (Despite / In spite of)	24. B (many)
22. B (to seeing)	25. B (going)
23. c (has been)	

V.

26. c 27. b 28. a 29. d 30. b 31. c 32. a 33. d

VI.

34. T 35. F 36. T 37. T 38. F

VII.

39. An suggested that energy-saving bulbs should be used to save electricity.
40. My father said "Shall we go out for a meal?"
41. I don't watch TV as/ so much/ often as my sister does.
42. Unless I finish my homework, I can't go out at the weekend.

TEST 14

I. Choose the best answer to complete the sentence.

1. I'm so proud _____ my father and love him so much.
a. at b. on c. with d. of
2. Christmas is celebrated _____ December 25.
a. in b. on c. at d. since
3. Anyone catching fish by electricity should be _____ heavily.
a. fined b. found c. fared d. paid
4. Flooding is the most common natural _____ to strike the United States.
a. tornado b. hurricane c. typhoon d. disaster
5. _____ they are poor, they are often happy.
a. Because b. Although c. Since d. As
6. Christmas is a joyful festival _____ is celebrated in most countries of the world.
a. it b. whose c. which d. who
7. Hoa _____ the TV so that her grandmother could hear better.
a. turned on b. turned off c. turned down d. turned up
8. I _____ walk when I was less than a year old.
a. can b. could c. would d. might
9. If I _____ you, I wouldn't buy this coat. It doesn't fit you at all.
a. am b. were c. be d. would be
10. 'The weather forecast wasn't very good, was it?' ' _____ '
a. Never mind. b. Yes, it was very cold.
c. No, it wasn't, I'm afraid. d. I think it wasn't.

II. Give correct form of the word.

11. Three thousand people were made _____ by the earthquake (home)
12. _____ water can cause many diseases (pollute)
13. He's quite an _____ person. He plays a lot of sports (energy)
14. This method is highly _____ in helping people stop smoking (effect)
15. This difficult concept is beyond students' _____ (understand)

III. Give correct form or tense of the verb.

16. A large number of people (kill) _____ by the 2010 Haiti earthquake.
17. Would Tim be angry with you if you (take) _____ his bike without asking?
18. The Earth (exist) _____ for billions of years.
19. It's nice of you (take) _____ me to the airport. Thank you.
20. You should have a mechanic (check) _____ your motorbike regularly.

IV. Choose the underlined word or phrase that needs correcting.

21. The police is looking for a five-year-old boy who went missing two days ago.
A B C D
22. He is studying English hardly because he finds it interesting to learn English.
A B C D

23. Brunei is one of the smallest but richest country in the world.

A B C D

24. I've found the keys that you were looking for them.

A B C D

25. It's so a nice day that we should do something - Let's go out swimming.

A B C D

V. Fill in each numbered blank with a word from the box.

label	down	energy	washing	turn	plug	showers	compact
-------	------	--------	---------	------	------	---------	---------

Saving (26) _____ doesn't always take days of planning. There are many things you can do right now to start saving energy and cutting (27) _____ on costs.

- Never use the dishwasher or (28) _____ machine unless it houses a full load.
- (29) _____ your electronics into power strips.
- (30) _____ off your computer and monitor when they are not being used.
- Use (31) _____ fluorescent bulbs to light your home.
- Take short (32) _____ instead of baths.
- Buy products that have the Energy Star (33) _____ on them.

VI. Read the passage carefully, then answer the questions.

Easter is celebrated every spring. It is always celebrated on a Sunday.

There are many symbols of Easter. German settlers to Pennsylvania brought with them the story of the Easter Bunny. Children believed that if they were good, the Easter Bunny would lay a nest of colored eggs. As the Easter Bunny custom spread across the country, it led to other traditions such as Easter baskets and gift giving.

Birds lay a great number of colorful eggs in the spring which has brought about the use of Easter eggs, egg dyeing and egg hunts. Long ago, the egg was honored during many springtime festivals. Egg dyeing was popular in ancient times and continues to be popular today. To the Christian, the egg represents the rebirth of the earth and of man.

Ham is the traditional food of Easter. This type of pork is popular throughout the world. In many cultures, the pig is a symbol of prosperity.

34. On what day of the week is Easter celebrated?

35. What symbol of Easter did the German settlers bring with them?

36. What are two other customs that came from the Easter Bunny tradition?

37. What does the egg represent to the Christian?

38. What do American traditionally eat on Easter?

VII. Use the following sets of words and phrases to write sentences.

39. My brother/ person/ always/ help/ me/ my homework

40. Today/ water power/ mostly/ used/ generate electricity

41. My father/ very interested/ play/ football/ when/ young

42. I/ wish/ have/ enough money/ take/ space trip

ĐÁP ÁN
TEST 14

I.

1. d 2. b 3. a 4. d 5. b 6. c 7. d 8. b 9. b 10. c

II.

11. homeless	14. effective
12. Polluted	15. understanding
13. energetic	

III.

16. were killed	19. to take
17. took	20. check
18. has existed	

IV.

21. A (are looking)	24. D (for)
22. B (hard)	25. A (such
23. C (countries)	

V.

26. energy	28. washing	30. Turn	32. showers
27. down	29. Plug	31. compact	33. label

VI.

34. Easter is celebrated on Sunday.
35. The Easter Bunny
36. Easter baskets and gift giving
37. To the Christian, the egg represents the rebirth of earth and man.
38. They eat ham.

VII.

39. My brother is the person who always helps me with my homework.
40. Today water power is mostly used to generate electricity.
41. My father was very interested in playing football when he was young.
42. I wish I had enough money to take a space trip.

TEST 15

I. Choose the best answer to complete the sentence.

1. What do you usually do _____ New Year's Day?
a. in b. on c. at d. for
2. Could you look _____ the kids while I go shopping?
a. for b. at c. after d. up
3. Scientists say that if people see a UFO, it _____ be an aircraft or a meteor.
a. might b. should c. could d. would
4. It was the river in _____ the children preferred to swim.
a. that b. which c. where d. it
5. _____ we have no money, we can't buy a new car.
a. Although b. When c. Since d. Unless
6. She _____ the cake with raspberries and whipped cream.
a. designed b. decorated c. prepared d. spoiled
7. Auld lang Syne is a song which is sung on _____.
a. New Year Eve b. Christmas Day c. New Year Day d. Easter Day
8. Peter was really ill yesterday. _____, he went to school and try to take the exam.
a. Therefore b. Since c. However d. But
9. The crown was set with _____ jewels - diamonds, rubies and emeralds.
a. costly b. worthy c. priceless d. precious
10. 'I've just passed the French exam.' '_____',
a. Thank you. b. Good idea. c. Well done. d. You're welcome.

II. Give correct form of the word.

11. Tuan is an _____ student. He takes part in a lot of _____. (act)
12. They organized a dinner in _____ of the year's successes (celebrate)
13. There are many different types of volcanic _____. (erupt)
14. Easter is a _____ festival which is celebrated in many countries (joy)
15. A teacher must be able to communicate _____ to students (effect)

III. Give correct form or tense of the verb.

16. What _____ you (do) _____ if you met an alien from other planet?
17. It's crowded here. I wish there (not be) _____ so many people.
18. If you want to attract more customers, try _____ (advertise) in the local paper.
19. I'm afraid I'm not hungry. I (eat/ already) _____.
20. When the storm (reach) _____ this area tomorrow, it will bring great destructive force.

IV. Choose the underlined word or phrase that needs correcting.

21. An has worked for Smith and Brothers before she came to work for US.
A B C D
22. The children laughed happy when they were watching "Tom and Jerry" on TV.
A B C D

23. Because of the storm weather, the children had three days off.

A	B	C	D
1	2	3	4
5	6	7	8
9	10	11	12
13	14	15	16
17	18	19	20
21	22	23	24
25	26	27	28
29	30	31	32
33	34	35	36
37	38	39	40
41	42	43	44
45	46	47	48
49	50	51	52
53	54	55	56
57	58	59	60
61	62	63	64
65	66	67	68
69	70	71	72
73	74	75	76
77	78	79	80
81	82	83	84
85	86	87	88
89	90	91	92
93	94	95	96
97	98	99	100

24. I went to see my friends who children I used to look after.

A	B	C	D
1	2	3	4
5	6	7	8
9	10	11	12
13	14	15	16
17	18	19	20
21	22	23	24
25	26	27	28
29	30	31	32
33	34	35	36
37	38	39	40
41	42	43	44
45	46	47	48
49	50	51	52
53	54	55	56
57	58	59	60
61	62	63	64
65	66	67	68
69	70	71	72
73	74	75	76
77	78	79	80
81	82	83	84
85	86	87	88
89	90	91	92
93	94	95	96
97	98	99	100

25. I was very interested to read your article for global warming in the newspaper.

A B C D

V. Choose the one option that best completes the passage.

For centuries, men (26) _____ the possibility of life on other planets and tried to prove its (27) _____. Even before the first space shuttle or probe was (28) _____, stories of life on other planets and life invading our (29) _____ planet were published prolifically. (30) _____ it's a desire to connect (31) _____ others or a burning curiosity to know whether we are truly (32) _____, the question of life on other planets (33) _____ people from every walk of life.

- walk of life (idm): tầng lớp xã hội

26. a. consider b. are considering c. have considered d. considered

27. a. appearance b. evidence c. condition d. existence

28. a. gone b. launched c. seen d. reported

29. a. connected b. belonged c. own d. related

30. a. Whether b. Which c. What d. When

31. a. of b. with c. in d. for

32. a. lonely b. lively c. freely d. alone

33. a. fascinates b. fascinating c. to fascinate d. that fascinates

VI. Read the passage carefully, then choose the correct answers.

Pollution is an environmental concern for people throughout the world. One university study suggests that pollutants in the water, air, and soil cause up to 40% of the premature deaths in the world's population. The majority of these deaths occur in developing countries.

Water in many developing countries is contaminated with toxic chemicals, also known as toxins. Most developing countries cannot afford water treatment facilities. Approximately 80% of infectious diseases in the world are caused by contaminated water.

Air pollution is a growing problem throughout the world. Indoor air pollution is one of the leading causes of lung cancer. Families in developing countries use open stoves for cooking and heating their homes. The smoke, which is full of chemicals and carcinogens, gets trapped inside where families eat and sleep. Outdoor pollution also causes disease and illness, especially in industrial cities such as Beijing, China, where cancer is the leading cause of death. Outdoor air pollution is also a concern in many wealthy countries. Those who live and work in urban centres such as Los Angeles or Toronto experience many warm days beneath a layer of smog.

Soil pollution is also a major concern, both in industrial and developing countries. Pollutants such as metals and pesticides seep into the earth's soil and contaminate the food supply. Dumping of industrial and domestic waste products produces much of the world's soil pollution.

- premature death (n): chết yểu - carcinogen (n): chất gây ung thư

34. According to the article, what causes 40% of the world's premature deaths?

a. Air pollution

b. Soil pollution

- c. Water pollution
d. Water, air and soil contamination
35. What is the reason people in developing countries die of waterborne illnesses?
- a. People pollute the water while fishing.
b. Water treatment facilities are too expensive.
c. Climate change effects the quality of water.
d. People don't clean with hot water.
36. Which is the cause of lung cancer?
- a. carcinogens in the water supply
b. hazardous waste in the home
c. indoor air pollution
d. Los Angeles factories
37. According to the article, where is cancer the leading cause of death?
- a. California b. Toronto c. Europe d. Beijing
38. Which is NOT mentioned as a source of soil pollution?
- a. dumping of waste b. use of pesticides
c. smoke from factories d. metals

VII. Rewrite the sentences.

39. Her neighbour often drives her to the supermarket.

She _____

40. It's a pity that Jane won't come to the party.

I wish _____

41. He'd rather play golf than tennis.

He prefers _____

42. The weather is bad, so we can't go for a picnic.

If _____

ĐÁP ÁN
TEST 15

I.

1. b 2. c 3. a 4. b 5. c 6. b 7. a 8. c 9. d 10. c

II.

11. active - activities

14. joyful

12. celebration

15. effectively

13. eruption

III.

16. would ... do

19. have already eaten

17. weren't

20. reaches

18. advertising

IV.

21. A (worked)

24. B (whose)

22. A (happily)

25. C (on/ about)

23. B (stormy)

V.

26. C 27. d 28. b 29. c 30. a 31. b 32. d 33. a

VI.

34. d 35. b 36. c 37. d 38. a

VII.

39. She is often driven to the supermarket by her neighbor.

40 I wish Jane would come to the party.

41. He prefers playing golf to tennis.

42. If the weather was/ were good, we could go for a picnic.

TEST 16

I. Choose the best answer to complete the sentence.

1. Pompeii was completely destroyed _____ A.D.79 by an eruption of Mount Vesuvius.
a. in b. on c. at d. from
2. Ho Chi Minh City will have temperatures _____ 27°C and 35°C.
a. at b. in c. from d. between
3. John Glenn was the first American _____ the earth.
a. orbit b. to orbit c. orbiting d. who orbits
4. It takes Moon one month to _____ around the Earth.
a. reach b. occur c. orbit d. fly
5. Bob is a kind of person to _____ one can talk about anything.
a. who b. that c. whom d. whose
6. Anyone who can't use a computer is at a _____.
a. disadvantage b. profit c. benefit d. discomfort
7. Give her your telephone number to ring _____ she gets lost.
a. unless b. in case c. although d. because
8. _____ he worked hard, he couldn't pass the exam.
a. Since b. Despite c. If d. Even though
9. I asked her what kind of music _____.
a. did she like b. that she liked c. she liked d. she liked it
10. I suggest collecting used paper every day.' ' _____',
a. We don't mind. b. That's an idea. c. Good job. d. So are we.

II. Give correct form of the word.

11. It was very _____ not to enter a good high school (**disappoint**)
12. We should try to keep the environment _____.? (**pollute**)
13. Customers nowadays want _____ that will save money (**produce**)
14. The most _____ earthquake in Japanese history killed about 150,000 people (**disaster**)
15. Everyone feels great _____ for the earthquake victims (**sympathize**)

III. Give correct form or tense of the verb.

16. My plane (leave) _____ at 5pm on Saturday.
17. If Jane (save) _____ £5 a week, she (have) _____ enough money in six months.
18. If we go on (litter) _____, our environment will become polluted.
19. We stopped (buy) _____ some food on the way home.
20. Jack (arrive) _____ while the children (play) _____ video games.

IV. Choose the underlined word or phrase that needs correcting.

21. Despite of the bad weather, we arrived at the airport on time.
A B C D
22. The museum where we are going to visit is not far from our hotel.

23. I received a letter from my friend, for whom I haven't seen for years.

24. John always arrives lately for his class although he leaves home early.

25. The critics were strong impressed by her performance.

V. Fill in each numbered blank with a word from the box.

throw	new	underground	around	disappear	room	hopefully
recycle						

When you throw things into the garbage, that garbage is taken to a garbage dump and it is usually buried (26) _____. It is buried so that it will decompose. What is de-com-pose? Decompose means to separate into parts and over many years most garbage will (27) _____ completely. That is why we bury garbage in the ground. The problem is some things we (28) _____ away take a long time to decompose and that means we could run out of (29) _____ underground to put all the garbage. Then what? You will have to keep the garbage in your house! Well, (30) _____ that won't happen because there is something you can do. You can (31) _____! What does that mean? The prefix "re" means "do again" and "cycle" is something that goes (32) _____ again and again. If you take something old that can be used again and make it (33) _____, you are recycling.

VI. Read the passage carefully, then decide whether the following statement are true (T) or false (F).

There are nine planets in our solar system. These planets each have their own atmosphere and environmental conditions. Scientists have been trying to research other planets to see if it is possible for life to exist on the other eight bodies in space.

Mercury and Pluto are probably the most difficult to research because of their position in the solar system. Mercury is so close to the sun that with our current technology a space shuttle would burn up before it even reached its atmosphere. Pluto is so far away that some scientists believe that it may not even be a planet but a large asteroid or comet. A space shuttle can not travel that far away because it is so far away from the sun that it would freeze.

Many scientists also believe that our solar system is not alone in the universe. Many believe there are several other systems that share the universe with US. It is difficult to know if there is life present elsewhere in the universe. The universe is a complex structure of space that may continue to be a mystery for many years to come.

34. There are nine planets in our solar system, besides Earth.

35. It is difficult to study the planet Mercury because it is very close to the sun.

36. We don't know much about Pluto even though we can see it up close.

37. Pluto may not be a planet, according to some scientists.

38. Scientists have got enough information about the universe.

VII. Rewrite the sentences.

39. I last saw my uncle when I was a small child.

I haven't _____

40. It would be a good idea to take more exercise.

You really ought _____

41. The film lasted for two hours.

They spent _____

42. The Colombian coffee cost less than the Kenyan coffee.

The Kenyan coffee was _____

ĐÁP ÁN
TEST 16

I.

1. a 2. d 3. b 4. c 5. c 6. a 7. b 8. d 9. c 10. b

II.

11. disappointing 13. products 15. sympathy
12. unpolluted 14. disastrous

III.

16. leaves 18. littering 20. arrived - were playing
17. saves - will have 19. to buy

IV.

21. A (Despite) 23. C (whom/ who) 25. B (strongly)
22. A (which) 24. B (late)

V.

26. underground 28. throw 30. hopefully 32. around
27. disappear 29. room 31. recycle 33. new

VI.

34. F 35. T 36. F 37. T 38. F

VII.

39. I haven't seen my uncle since I was a small child.
40. You really ought to take more exercise.
41. They spent two hours watching the film.
42. The Kenyan coffee was more expensive than the Colombian coffee.

TEST 17

I. Choose the best answer to complete the sentence.

1. She congratulated me warmly _____ my new job.
a. for b. about c. to d. on
2. Family members who live apart try to be together _____ Tet.
a. on b. at c. in d. by
3. It's getting light. Shall I _____ the lights to save electricity?
a. turn down b. turn up c. turn off d. turn on
4. Jane, _____ is my pen pal, is going to come and see me next week.
a. who b. that c. whom d. which
5. _____ air pollution and water pollution are bad for our health.
a. All b. Either c. Neither d. Both
6. Oil _____ if you pour it on water.
a. floats b. is floating c. would float d. must float
7. Practice hard _____ your English will improve.
a. but b. so c. and d. or
8. _____ Nancy is a good friend, she sometimes makes me angry.
a. Because b. Although c. As d. When
9. My English teacher suggested we _____ speak English in class.
a. would b. had to c. might d. should
10. 'I've won the first prize in the English speaking contest.' '_____
a. That's right. b. It's not bad. c. Congratulations! d. Thank God!

II. Give correct form of the word.

11. _____ are concerned about the air pollution in big cities, (environment)
12. I think Mother's Day should be celebrated _____. (nation)
13. In Western countries electricity, gas and water are _____. (need)
14. There were 1,180 UFO _____ reported in Canada in 2013. (sight)
15. The ending of the book was entirely _____. (predict)

III. Give correct form or tense of the verb.

16. Her parents (die) _____ a long time ago.
17. He couldn't face (drive) _____ all the way to Los Angeles.
18. Mr. Robinson (teach) _____ at the university since 1998.
19. Many materials can (recycle) _____, such as paper, plastic, metal and glass.
20. This T-shirt makes you (look) _____ younger.

IV. Choose the underlined word or phrase that needs correcting.

21. Although she doesn't trust weather forecasts, but she likes watching them.
A B C D
22. The city suffers from both air pollution or water pollution.
A B C D
23. Kathy left the party early, and so John did.

24. Texas is larger than California, but it has less people than California does.
 A B C D
25. She was one of five astronauts on the space shuttle Challenger, that completed a
 A B
 successful six-day voyage in space in June 1983.
 C D

V. Choose the one option that best completes the passage.

Saving energy means saving money. One way to save money is to (26) _____ incandescent lights with fluorescents. This can result in a savings of more than 50% (27) _____ your monthly lighting costs. When it's time to replace old appliances, it's wise to spend a bit more for an energy-efficient (28) _____, and be sure that you are taking advantage of (29) _____ settings already on your current refrigerator, dishwasher, washing machine, or dryer. Windows provide another opportunity to (30) _____ your energy costs. Caulk old windows that might be leaky to prevent drafts, and choose double-paned windows (31) _____ you're building an addition or replacing old windows. (32) _____ areas of your home or apartment offer opportunities to save energy and money. The results are significant and are (33) _____ worth the effort.

- | | | | |
|----------------------|-----------------|------------------|----------------|
| 26. a. buy | b. provide | c. replace | d. recycle |
| 27. a. in | b. with | c. for | d. on |
| 28. a. sample | b. model | c. modern | d. mode |
| 29. a. saving-energy | b. energy-saved | c. energy-saving | d. save-energy |
| 30. a. pay | b. take | c. get | d. cut |
| 31. a. if | b. though | c. since | d. once |
| 32. a. Almost | b. Most | c. Mostly | d. Every |
| 33. a. well | b. good | c. much | d. more |

VI, Read the passage carefully, then answer the questions.

The idea for creating a day for children to honor their fathers began in Spokane, Washington. A woman by the name of Sonora Smart Dodd thought of the idea for Father's Day while listening to a Mother's Day sermon in 1909. Having been raised by her father, William Jackson Smart, after her mother died, Sonora wanted her father to know how special he was to her. It was her father that made all the parental sacrifices and was, in the eyes of his daughter, a courageous, selfless, and loving man. Sonora's father was born in June, so she chose to hold the first Father's Day celebration in Spokane, Washington on the 19th of June, 1910. In 1972, President Richard Nixon established a permanent national observance of Father's Day to be held on the third Sunday of June.

34. Who first had the idea of a "father's day"?
35. Did Sonora want a special day to honor her father?
36. What qualities did Sonora's father have?
37. Why did she choose to hold the first Father's Day celebration in June?
38. When is Father's Day celebrated?

VII. Use the following sets of words and phrases to write sentences.

- 39. That/ restaurant/ we/ have/ lunch/ yesterday
- 40. Football/ seem/ be/ most/ popular/ game/ England
- 41. He suggested/ the committee/ they/ delay/ make/ decision
- 42. It/ important/ you/ stop/ smoke/ at once

TEST 17

I.

1. d 2. b 3. c 4. a 5. d 6. a 7. c 8. b 9. d 10. c

II.

11. Environmentalists

14. sightings

12. nationally

15. predictable

13. necessities

III.

16. died

19. be recycled

17. driving

20. look

18. has been teaching/ has taught

IV.

21. C (she)

23. D (did John)

25. B (which)

22. D (and)

24. C (fewer)

V.

26. c 27. d 28. b 29. c 30. d 31. a 32. b 33. A

VI.

34. Sonora Smart Dodd did.

35. Yes, she did.

36. Sonora's father was a courageous, selfless and loving man.

37. Because her father was born in June.

38. Father's Day is celebrated on the third Sunday of June.

VII.

39. That is the restaurant where we had lunch yesterday.

40. Football seems to be the most popular game in England.

41. He suggested the committee that they (should) delay making decision.

42. It's important for you to stop smoking at once.

TEST 18

I. Choose the best answer to complete the sentence.

1. Lighting accounts _____ 10% to 15% of the electricity bill.
a. on b. to c. at d. for
2. Tet is a festival which occurs _____ late January or early February.
a. on b. in c. at d. from
3. Whenever I meet new words, I always _____ in a dictionary.
a. look for them b. look up them c. look them up d. look them over
4. They live in the house _____ roof is full of holes.
a. which b. of which c. who d. whose
5. This is the woman _____ in Peru last year
a. who I met her b. who met c. I met d. I met her
6. He promises never _____ again,
a. to smoke b. smoking c. smoke d. he smoked
7. _____ he didn't feel well, the boy wanted to stay home from school.
a. Even though b. Because c. When d. Unless
8. It's advisable to _____ things in order to save natural resources.
a. recycle b. replace c. reduce d. resume
9. The _____ of hiding eggs on Easter is practiced in many American homes.
a. costume b. experience c. celebration d. custom
10. I'm sorry about the noise.' ' _____ '
a. That's right. b. Of course. c. It's OK d. You're welcome.

II. Give correct form of the word.

11. Air _____ harms human health and the environment (**pollute**)
12. She _____ displayed her prize to her parents (**pride**)
13. Are fluorescent bulbs really more _____ than normal light bulbs? (**efficiency**)
14. Do you believe in the _____ of the UFOs? (**exist**)
15. Are UFOs real or _____? (**imagine**)

III. Give correct form or tense of the verb.

16. The preparations for Tet (already/ make) _____.
17. The last time I (see) _____ her, she was thinking of moving to France.
18. If it (not rain) _____ tomorrow night, we'll have the party outside.
19. I cannot allow you (go) _____ out driving in this weather.
20. Nancy (study) _____ for the second-semester exams at present.

IV. Choose the underlined word or phrase that needs correcting.

21. She suggests we going out for dinner after the movie.
A B C D
22. When I first visited the USA, I couldn't get used with the cold weather.
A B C D
23. A large number of people were killed when the building was collapsed.

24. ^A At the airport, I ^B was waiting for some ^C relatives I had never met ^D them before.

25. If the atmosphere ^A is polluted, the solar ^B energy that ^C reaching the earth ^D may be

dangerous.

V. Fill in each numbered blank with a word from the box.

property	destroyed	beyond	many
density	washed	loss	tsunamis

All natural disasters cause (26) _____ in some way. Depending on the severity, lives can be lost in any number of disasters. Falling buildings or trees, freezing to death, being (27) _____ away, or heat stroke are just some of the deadly effects. Some disasters cause more loss of life than others, and population (28) _____ affects the death count as well.

Then there is loss of (29) _____, which affects people's living quarters, transportation, livelihood, and means to live. Fields saturated in salt water after (30) _____ take years to grow crops again. Homes (31) _____ by floods, hurricanes, cyclones, landslides and avalanches, a volcanic eruption, or an earthquake are often (32) _____ repair or take a lot of time to become livable again. Personal effects, memorabilia, vehicles, and documents also take a hit after (33) _____ natural disasters.

VI. Read the passage carefully, then choose the correct answers.

Do you run the faucet while you brush your teeth? Do you know that you are wasting the water? Whenever you turn on the faucet, think about how you'd feel if you had to carry that water from a well! Then you'll remember not to run extra water while brushing teeth.

Is there litter around your school or at the park? Litter doesn't look nice but some litter can be harmful to other creatures. Always put litter in trash cans and be sure to recycle all the aluminum and steel cans. Look for the triangle at the bottom of plastic containers. If you see the numbers 1 or 2 in the triangle, the plastic item can be recycled.

Even something as simple as using both side of a piece of paper can help the earth. When you are finished with a school worksheet, use the back of the paper for drawing or feed it back into printer to use for another worksheet. You can save electricity by turning off the computer or other electronics when they are not being used and don't forget to turn off the lights when you leave a room.

34. What can people do to help the earth?

- a. Save water
- b. Reuse waste paper
- c. Recycle things
- d. All of the above

35. Which of the following cannot be recycled (or reused)?

- a. Plastic
- b. Water
- c. Paper
- d. Metal

36. What symbol can you see at the bottom of the container that can be recycled?

- a. Circle
- b. Oval
- c. Triangle
- d. Diamond

37. What can you do to save electricity?

- a. Turn off the television when you are not watching it.
- b. Turn off the faucet when you finish using.

- c. Use a worksheet with single printed page for another worksheet.
- d. Look for recycle information at the bottom of plastic containers.

38. Which of the following is not the writer's advice?

- a. Reuse and recycle paper, bottles and cans.
- b. Put litter in trash cans.
- c. Save water and electricity.
- d. Reduce the amount of garbage we produce

VII. Rewrite the sentences.

39. I was given some information about a local gym.

They _____

40. No other players of the school team can play better than Peter.

Peter is _____

41. Work hard, or you'll fail the coming exam.

If _____

42. She doesn't get good marks because she doesn't work hard.

If _____

ĐÁP ÁN
TEST 18

I.

1. d 2. b 3. c 4. d 5. c 6. a 7. b 8. a 9. d 10. c

II.

11. pollution	14. existence
12. proudly	15. imaginary
13. efficient	

III.

16. have already been made	18. doesn't rain	20. is studying
17. saw	19. to go	

IV.

22. D (to)	23. D (collapsed)	25. C (reaches)
21. B (go/ should go)	24. D (them)	

VI.

26. loss	28. density	30. tsunamis	32. beyond
27. washed	29. property	31. destroyed	33. many

V.

34. d 35. b 36. c 37. a 38. d

VI.

39. They gave me some information about a local gym.
40. Peter is the best player of the school team.
41. If you don't work hard, you'll fail the coming exam.
42. If she worked hard, she could/ would get good marks.

TEST 19

I. Choose the best answer to complete the sentence.

1. The power of speech distinguishes human beings _____ animals.
a. from b. with c. to d. as
2. She thanked US _____ being so kind.
a. of b. for c. about d. over
3. People should protect trees _____ cutting them down.
a. in spite of b. due to c. in place of d. instead of
4. The city was completely _____ by the earthquake last week.
a. collapsed b. struck c. destroyed d. broken
5. _____ is use an item more than once.
a. Recycling b. Reuse c. Reducing d. Reaction
6. The trip was short; _____ we enjoyed it very much.
a. although b. therefore c. however d. moreover
7. Mars, _____ is 140 million miles away, is known as the red planet.
a. which b. that c. who d. where
8. Are you coming to the party? ~ I'm not sure. I _____ go to the concert instead.
a. should b. must c. would d. might
9. Let's go out for dinner, _____?
a. do we b. shall we c. will you d. do you
10. 'You've made much a wonderful speech!' '_____. I'm glad you think so.'
a. Sure b. Not at all c. Thank you d. My pleasure

II. Give correct form of the word.

11. If people save energy, there'll be no _____ of electricity (short)
12. I think UFOs are just the _____ of some writers (imagine)
13. A number of species could soon _____ forever (appear)
14. Cate Blanchett has been _____ as Best Actress for her role in Blue Jasmine (nominate)
15. This job is so boring. I wish I could do something more _____. (create)

III. Give correct form or tense of the verb.

16. I'd rather (stay) _____ home if you don't mind.
17. New Year is coming. Our house needs (repaint) _____.
18. When the boy (hit) _____ by the car he was badly injured.
19. My father (settle) _____ this problem for me if he were here.
20. This week he (stay) _____ with his aunt, who (live) _____ in town.

IV. Choose the underlined word or phrase that needs correcting.

21. There are probably around 3,000 languages speaking in the world.
A B C D
22. Take an umbrella with you in case it will rain in the afternoon.
A B C D
23. I don't know the town well because I am only here since last week.

24. I read *Harry Potter*, that is a series of seven novels written by J.K Rowling.

25. Jack has become confidently as a result of his success.

V. Choose the one option that best completes the passage.

Mid-Autumn Festival is one of the two most (26) _____ festivals in Vietnam, and is especially enjoyed by Vietnamese children. The festival annually (27) _____ on 15th of 8th Lunar month. (28) _____ this special day, Vietnamese families organize activities around their children. Parents buy facial masks and lanterns for their children so that that can (29) _____ in a candlelit lantern procession in the evening. One spectacular performance of the festival in Unicorn dancing on the street, (30) _____ is often performed by a group of young teenagers. In the evening of Full Moon, Vietnamese families often make a big (31) _____ with a lot of fruits, candies and the most special thing that cannot miss is Moon Cake.

Up to (32) _____, Mid-Autumn Festival remains a special day for children and still a meaningful tradition. The festival shows a gratitude (33) _____ family relationship and friendship.

- | | | | |
|--------------------|---------------|---------------|----------------|
| 26. a. likely | b. popular | c. pleasant | d. suitable |
| 27. a. takes turn | b. takes part | c. takes back | d. takes place |
| 28. a. During | b. In | c. On | d. At |
| 29. a. participate | b. enjoy | c. interest | d. follow |
| 30. a. that | b. it | c. what | d. which |
| 31. a. table | b. feast | c. dish | d. plate |
| 32. a. here | b. time | c. now | d. then |
| 33. a. towards | b. forwards | c. upwards | d. backwards |

VI. Read the passage carefully, then decide whether the following statements are true (T) or false (F).

Mars is the fourth planet from the Sun and is about half the size of Earth. It is a dry, dusty, rocky planet where the soil appears reddish brown because it contains iron oxide, or rust. Mars is sometimes called “The Red Planet”.

Mars has a very thin atmosphere consisting of carbon dioxide, nitrogen, and argon.

The temperature on Mars ranges from -125 to 23 degrees Fahrenheit. It is too cold and the atmosphere is too thin for liquid water to exist on the surface of Mars. Of all the planets, Mars has the largest volcanic mountain, Olympus Mons, and the largest known canyon, Valles Marineris, in the solar system. Olympus Mons is three times taller than Mt. Everest and Valles Marineris dwarfs the Grand Canyon. Mars has two small natural satellites (or moons), Phobos and Deimos. Since Mars has an axial tilt similar to that of Earth, it has seasons just like the Earth. Mars orbits the sun once every 1.8807 Earth years. A day on Mars is 24.62 hours, about the same as it is on Earth.

- axial tilt (n): độ nghiêng trục quay (của hành tinh, vệ tinh hay thiên thể)

34. Mars is much bigger than Earth.
35. The soil on Mars appears reddish-brown because it contains rust.

36. Mars does not have any bodies of water.
37. Valles Marineris is as large as the Grand Canyon.
38. A day on Mars is about as long as a day on Earth.

VII. Rewrite the sentences.

39. The suitcase was too heavy for Jane to carry it herself.

The suitcase was so _____

40. You shouldn't touch that switch.

If _____

41. He was tired, but he continued working.

He continued _____

42. 'Let's break for lunch,' John said.

John suggested that _____

ĐÁP ÁN
TEST 19

I.

1. a 2. b 3. d 4. c 5. b 6. c 7. a 8. d 9. b 10. c

II.

11. shortage	13. disappeared	15. creative
12. imagination	14. nominated	

III.

16. stay	18. was hit	20. is staying - lives
17. repainting	19. would settle	

IV.

21. C (spoken)	23. C (have been)	25. B (confident)
22. D (rains)	24. B (which)	

V.

26. b 27. d 28. c 29. a 30. d 31. b 32. c 33. a

VI.

34. F 35. T 36. T 37. F 38. T

VII.

39. The suitcase was so heavy that Jane couldn't carry it herself.
40. If I were you, I wouldn't touch that switch.
41. He continued working though/ although/ even though he was tired.
42. John suggested that we (should) break for lunch.

TEST 20

I. Choose the best to complete the sentence.

1. Do you believe _____ intelligent alien life?
a. on b. in c. at d. for
2. We try to prevent people _____ littering.
a. in b. with c. from d. by
3. I love playing computer games _____ I don't have much time for it.
a. so b. and c. because d. but
4. _____ on the world is impossible if you set your mind to do it.
a. Something b. Nothing c. Everything d. Anything
5. He is a _____ person. He always thinks of other people's feelings.
a. considerate b. generous c. humorous d. active
6. The judge asked Helen if _____ anything to add.
a. she has b. she was having c. she had d. did she have
7. I am not interested in tennis and _____.
a. my sister does, too b. so is my sister
c. neither is my sister d. my sister isn't
8. A _____ is a very strong wind that moves quickly in a circle.
a. flood b. tornado c. typhoon d. tidal wave
9. The United States uses twice as _____ energy as the whole Europe.
a. much b. many c. lots of d. more
10. 'Shall we go _____ for a ride?' '_____
a. Oh, Really? b. You're so kind! c. Thank a lot. d. Yes, let's.

II. Give correct form of the word.

11. Without _____, natural resources will be used up within a hundred years (**conserve**)
12. *12 Years a Slave* received 9 Oscar _____, including Best Picture (**nominate**)
13. Mount Pinatubo, a volcano in the Philippines, _____ in 1991. (**eruption**)
14. Denmark are striving to develop _____ technologies to save energy (**innovate**)
15. The children are _____ running around their schoolyard (**joy**)

III. Give correct form or tense of the verb.

16. It's time (go) _____ now, isn't it?
17. f she (have) _____ 5 pounds more, she (buy) _____ herself this T-shirt.
18. We're all busy (practice) _____ for the charity performance.
19. Neither the girls nor Susan (see) _____ this film before.
20. We are going to have our new house (build) _____ next month.

IV. Choose the underlined word or phrase that needs correcting.

21. We wouldn't stay up late every night if we don't have so many tests.
A B C D
22. Jake suggested that we could take his car or walk to the movie theater.

23. Anybody wants to join us at the dance should let us know.
 A B C D
24. The boys enjoy riding their bikes around the streets in Saturday evenings.
 A B C D
25. I asked Oliver if he could remember where had he put the camera.
 A B C D

V. Fill in each numbered blank with a word from the box.

flood	planet	atmosphere	warm	colder	melt	global	burning
-------	--------	------------	------	--------	------	--------	---------

The news media has covered the problem of (26) _____ warming many times over. At one time during the Ice Age the earth was much (27) _____ than it is now and natural forces caused the (28) to warm up to the temperatures we experience now. That is normal climate change. Global warming is an increase in the temperature of the earth's (29) _____ caused by the increase in greenhouse gases. Natural levels of greenhouse gases like carbon dioxide keep the earth (30) _____; excess gases from (31) coal and automobile emissions cause the atmosphere temperature to rise. With warmer temperature the polar ice caps are starting to (32) _____ and add extra water to the oceans. This raises the sea level and will eventually (33) _____ low areas.

VI Read the passage carefully, then answer the questions.

Where will you go on your next vacation? Disneyland? Sea World? Outer space? Tourists are now paying big bucks to travel into space with astronauts! The first space tourist was Dennis Tito, an American businessman. In 2001, he paid about \$20 million to ride on a Russian rocket to the International space Station. The Space Station circles 220 miles above Earth. Tito stayed on the station for a week, hanging out with astronauts and eating space food. The latest space tourist was Anousheh Ansari, an Iranian-born woman from the United States who went to the Space Station in mid-September 2006.

How safe is space travel? Apart from the risk of crashing, space tourists have some special things to worry about. Earth's atmosphere protects US from dangerous radiation from the sun. Space travelers are exposed to more of the sun's rays. But for tourists spending only a few days or weeks in space, the radiation probably isn't harmful.

A bigger problem might be space sickness. Without Earth's gravity to hold them down, visitors to the space Station float around inside the craft. It may look like fun on TV, but it can make first-time space travelers dizzy and sick. Luckily, the sickness usually wears off quickly. Then space tourists can enjoy their trip-and the amazing view of Earth.

34. Who was the first tourist to travel into space?
35. How long did he spend in space?
36. What problems do space travelers face when they are in space?
37. Why do space travelers float around inside the craft?
38. How do space visitors feel when they suffer from space sickness?

VII. Use the following sets of words and phrases to write sentences.

39. Her brother/ suggest/ she/ study/ harder/ so/ get into/ good high school
40. Thanks/ the Internet/ people/ can/ get/ information/ fast/ easily

41. The girl/ talking/ your brother/ my best friend
42. What/ you/ do/ if/ you/ win/ a million dollars/ now?

TEST 20

I

1. b 2. c 3. d 4. b 5. a 6. c 7. c 8. b 9. a 10. d

II.

11. conservation
12. nominations
13. erupted
14. innovative
15. joyfully

III.

16. to go
17. had - would buy
18. practicing
19. has seen
20. built

IV.

21. C (didn't) 23. A (who wants) D (he had)
22. B (should) 24. D (on)

V.

26. global 28. planet 30. warm 32. melt
27. colder 29. atmosphere 31. burning 33. flood

VI.

34. Dennis Tito was the first tourist to travel into space.
35. He spent a week in space.
36. The problems (that space travelers face when they are in space) are radiation sickness and space sickness.
37. Because there is no gravity in space.
38. When space visitors suffer from space sickness they feel dizzy and sick.

VII.

39. Her brother suggests she (should) study harder so (that) she can get into a good high school.
40. Thanks to the Internet people can get information fast and easily.
41. The girl talking/ who is talking to your brother is my best friend.
42. What would you do if you won a million dollars now?

TEST 21

I. Choose the best answer to complete the sentence.

1. When the trucks leave the place, the ground is covered _____ trash.
a. of b. on c. with d. for
2. If we _____ littering, the environment will become seriously polluted.
a. pick up b. look for c. clean up d. go on
3. I am not sure if Harry can go to the movie. He _____ have time.
a. must not b. might not c. can not d. should not
4. She was a woman _____ I greatly respected.
a. which b. whom c. whose d. to who
5. His father helped him with his homework _____ he was tired after work.
a. though b. since c. when d. because
6. _____ is a chemical used for killing insects.
a. Dynamite b. Sewage c. Pesticide d. Fertilizer
7. There is a meeting tonight, _____?
a. is it b. isn't it c. is there d. isn't there
8. _____ using compact fluorescent bulbs to save electricity?
a. Shall we b. Why not c. What about d. I suggest
9. Now I must go _____ I will be late for the last bus.
a. or b. but c. and d. so
10. ' _____ ' 'Oh, not too bad.'
a. What's wrong with you? b. What was the weather like?
b. Shall we go swimming? d. Your dress is just wonderful!

II. Give correct form of the word.

11. He was the _____ of the whole school after winning the contest (proud)
12. _____ flying object is commonly abbreviated as UFO. (identify)
13. Space travel can be _____ and restless (excite)
14. Information is _____ available on the Internet (free)
15. The student asked if he could have an _____ on his paper (extend)

III. Give correct form or tense of the verb.

16. What will you do if you decide (take) _____ a space trip?
17. We (live) _____ in Ha Noi for twenty years, but now we live in Hue.
18. If he (improve) _____ his IT skills, he would easily get a job.
19. X-rays (discover) _____ by William Roentgen in 1895.
20. Jack (not tell) _____ me anything about his holiday plans so far.

IV. Choose the underlined word or phrase that needs correcting.

21. Mary, together with her friends, are working hard preparing for the exams.
A B C D
22. He stopped to ask me that I was all right.

- A B C D
23. We have spent a lot of time to discuss the problem but can not find any solutions.
- A B C D
24. The successful of our local theatre has put our city on the map.
- A B C D
25. We most all put pressure on the authorities if we want something be done.
- A B C D

V. Choose the one option that best completes the passage.

These days it is (26) _____ to open a newspaper without reading about the damage we are doing to the environment. The earth is being (27) _____ and the future looks bad. What can each of US do? We cannot (28) _____ up our polluted rivers and seas over night. But we can stop adding to the problem while scientists search (29) _____ answers.

It may not be easy to change your lifestyle (30) _____ but some steps are easy to take: cut down the amount of driving you do, or use as (31) _____ plastic as possible. It is also easy to save energy, (32) _____ also reduces household bills. We must all make a personal decision to work for the future of our planet (33) _____ we want to ensure a better world for our grandchildren.

- | | | | |
|--------------------|---------------|---------------|---------------|
| 26. a. interesting | b. impossible | c. necessary | d. wonderful |
| 27. a. built | b. warned | c. threatened | d. extinct |
| 28. a. clean | b. set | c. turn | d. put |
| 29. a. at | b. for | c. up | d. into |
| 30. a. slowly | b. mainly | c. constantly | d. completely |
| 31. a. much | b. many | c. little | d. few |
| 32. a. that | b. which | c. what | d. it |
| 33. a. if | b. unless | c. because | d. though |

VI. Read the passage carefully, then choose the correct answers.

A tsunami is a natural disaster more devastating than earthquakes, tornadoes, or any other disaster you can think of. Tsunami is a Japanese word that means *harbor wave*. A tsunami happens when huge waves are formed after something under the ocean occurs to make these large waves form. Erupting volcanoes can also cause tsunamis to occur. The waves start in one area but they move quickly in all different directions once the tsunami begins. Tsunamis begin as an under the water earthquake. The force of the earth moving causes the water to move and produce huge waves. Waves from a tsunami can travel through the water as fast as 500 miles per hour. As they approach the coast, they continue to grow in size before smashing down on the cities and towns along the coastline. These waves can often be as high as 100 feet, causing much destruction.

34. What is a tsunami?
- | | |
|---------------------------|---|
| a. A series of huge waves | b. A storm with strong winds |
| c. A sudden gust of wind | d. A violent shaking of earth's surface |
35. Which is the most disastrous, according to the passage?
- | | | | |
|---------------|------------|------------|--------------|
| a. Earthquake | b. Tornado | c. Tsunami | d. Hurricane |
|---------------|------------|------------|--------------|
36. Which can cause a tsunami to occur?

- a. Droughts b. Floods c. Hurricanes d. Volcanic eruptions

37. What happens to a tsunami as it approaches the coast?

- a. It changes direction. b. It decreases the height.
c. It grows in size. d. It moves more quickly, land?

38. What happens when a tsunami hits

- a. It devastates coastal regions. b. It causes underwater earthquake.
c. It blows everything out to sea. d. It sucks up everything in its path.

VII. Rewrite the sentences.

39. It's a pity we can't visit the Louvre.

We wish _____

40. The children could not return schools unless it stopped raining.

If _____

41. Because of the heavy rain for many days, the whole city had to live in water.

Because _____

42. People have marched to London. They are protesting against pollution.

People _____

ĐÁP ÁN
TEST 21

I.

1. c 2. d 3. b 4. b 5. a 6. c 7. d 8. c 9. a 10. b

II.

11. pride	14. freely
12. Unidentified	15. extension
13. exciting	

III.

16. to take	19. were discovered
17. lived	20. hasn't told
18. improved	

IV.

21. B (is)	24. A (success)
22. B (if/ whether)	25. D (to be done)
23. B (discussing)	

V.

26. b 27. c 28. a 29. b 30. d 31. c 32. b 33. a

VI.

34. a 35. c 36. d 37. c 38. a

VII.

39. We wish we could visit the Louvre.
40. If it didn't stop raining, the children could not return schools.
41. Because it rained heavily for many days, the whole city had to live in water.
42. People who are protesting against pollution have marched to London.

TEST 22

I. Choose the best answer to complete the sentence.

1. She waited _____ the bus stop _____ over twenty minutes.
a. at - for b. in - in c. on - for d. at - in
2. The city of Harar is famous _____ its ancient buildings.
a. with b. at c. by d. for
3. _____ I had nothing for lunch but an apple, I ate dinner early.
a. For b. Since c. Even though d. Due to
4. Egypt is a place _____ anyone would like to go for a vacation.
a. who b. which c. where d. whose
5. This is _____ a good book that I can't stop reading it.
a. too b. very c. so d. such
6. I don't like Jane. She's _____ her sister is.
a. as friendly as b. more friendly than
c. less friendly as d. not so friendly as
7. It's understood that most comedians have a good sense of _____.
a. loyalty b. justice c. humor d. smell
8. A large number of apartment and office blocks _____ in the earthquake.
a. struck b. collapsed c. damaged d. destroyed
9. You won't learn to use a keyboard properly _____ you don't practice.
a. when b. unless c. although d. if
10. 'Can I borrow your dictionary?' '_____. Here you are.'
a. Not at all b. Certainly c. Good idea d. Never mind

II. Give correct form of the word.

11. He was nominated as the most effective _____ in the town charity program (**active**)
12. Tell me how much energy _____ this model has. (**efficient**)
13. Energy-saving bulbs should be used to save _____. (**electric**)
14. People need to increase their daily _____ of fruit and vegetables (**consume**)
15. _____ pilots and strong winds were possible factors that led to a crash in Shannon Airport (**experience**)

III. Give correct form or tense of the verb.

16. She said angrily that she (not know) _____ anything.
17. Do you think people (live) _____ on the moon one day?
18. He tries (learn) _____ at least 25 new words every day.
19. We saw Harry (wait) _____ for the bus at the bus stop downtown.
20. He (buy) _____ you a palace if he (be) _____ a millionaire.

IV. Choose the underlined word or phrase that needs correcting.

21. If he were here now, he could be able to give US some advice.

A B C D

22. She maybe the only person I know who owns a Ferrari.

The boring lesson made _____

ĐÁP ÁN
TEST 22

I.

1. a 2. d 3. b 4. c 5. d 6. d 7. c 8. b 9. d 10. b

II.

11. activist	13. electricity	15. Inexperienced
12. efficiency	14. consumption	

III.

16. didn't know	18. to learn	20. would buy - was/ were
17. will live	19. waiting	

IV.

21. C (would)	23. C (be)	25. B (whom)
22. A (may be)	24. c (knew)	

V.

26. erupt	28. nature	30. Farmland	32. faucet
27. hurricane	29. careless	31. little	33. recycling

VI.

34. T 35. F 36. T 37. F 38. T

VII.

39. If the car wasn't/ weren't expensive, we could/ would buy it.
40. In spite of the extremely hot weather, they went jogging in the park./ In spite of the fact that the weather was extremely hot, they went jogging in the park.
41. Jane had no difficulty making herself understood.
42. The boring lesson made Bill fall asleep.

TEST 23

I. Choose the best answer to complete the sentence.

1. _____ the age of 14 I realized I would never become a brain surgeon.
a. At b. On c. In d. By
2. I looked _____ websites on Egyptian music, but didn't find anything.
a. after b. at c. over d. for
3. Many countries have had plans to recycle waste paper to _____ money.
a. spend b. save c. waste d. keep
4. You'd better take a taxi; _____ you will arrive late.
a. otherwise b. therefore c. however d. moreover
5. I've just met Susan, _____ brother works in London.
a. who b. whom c. whose d. which
6. He was very _____ to people who had less than he did.
a. humorous b. considerate c. jealous d. generous
7. _____ his poor health, he is always cheerful.
a. Due to b. In spite of c. Because of d. Instead of
8. It's said that SABS has killed more than _____ people worldwide.
a. three hundred's b. three hundreds'
c. three hundreds d. three hundred
9. Grace spends hours in the library every day. She _____ work very hard.
a. might b. can c. must d. should
10. 'Will you join US for coffee tonight?' '_____',
a. Of course, I like it. b. I'd love to.
c. It's my pleasure. d. I don't mind at all.

II. Give correct form of the word.

11. She gets a lot of _____ with her preparations for Tet. (**satisfy**)
12. The earthquake brought total _____ to the Haiyuan area (**destroy**)
13. The three major _____ in the exhaust gases are HC, co and NOx. (**pollute**)
14. Our team played _____. We lost (**successful**)
15. After several burglaries in the area, security is now a high _____. (**prior**)

III. Give correct form or tense of the verb.

16. No matter how hard I tried, he kept on (complain) _____.
17. We got a carpenter (repair) _____ the cupboard.
18. A supermarket (build) _____ near the street market at the moment.
19. They (never/ go) _____ to the cinema when they lived in the country.
20. He (always/ ask) _____ stupid questions. It really annoys me.

IV. Choose the underlined word or phrase that needs correcting.

21. They live in a house which roof could collapse at any time.

A

B

C

D

22. He chose that school because its fine reputation.

A B C D

23. She asked her students to repeat the sentences again.

A B C D

24. My house was not far from school, but I went to school on foot.

A B C D

25. There are some people in the government who is trying to improve the lives of poor people.

A B C D

V. Choose the one option that best completes the passage.

Environmental pollution is one of the most (26) _____ problems of mankind today. Air, water and soil are necessary to all (27) _____ things. Man operates machines and vehicles (28) _____ fill the air with noise. They also dirty the air with gases and smoke. (29) _____ polluted air can cause illness and even death. Man destroys natural beauty by (30) _____ garbage on the land and in the water. They poison the water (31) _____ chemicals and other substances. Polluted water kills fish and other marine life. They damage the soil with too (32) _____ fertilizers and pesticides. Governments should pass laws that (33) _____ people and factory to stop certain polluting activities.

- | | | | |
|----------------|---------------|-------------|--------------|
| 26. a. careful | b. simple | c. serious | d. special |
| 27. a. live | b. lively | c. alive | d. living |
| 28. a. what | b. that | c. these | d. those |
| 29. a. Badly | b. Hardly | c. Mostly | d. Mainly |
| 30. a. picking | b. collecting | c. clearing | d. littering |
| 31. a. by | b. with | c. in | d. to |
| 32. a. much | b. lots of | c. many | d. little |
| 33. a. require | b. advise | c. suggest | d. offer |

VI. Read the passage carefully, then answer the questions.

BENEFITS OF RECYCLING

Recycling is beneficial in two ways: it reduces the inputs (energy and raw materials) to a production system and reduces the amount of waste produced for disposal. A study conducted by the Technical University of Denmark found that in 80% of cases, recycling is the most efficient method to get rid of household waste.

Some materials like aluminum can be recycled indefinitely as there is no change to the materials. Recycling aluminium saves 95% of the energy cost of processing new aluminium because the melting temperature is reduced from 900°C to 600°C. It is by far the most efficient material to recycle. Recycling plastic saves 70% of the energy used in creating new plastic, and paper recycling saves 40% of the energy required to make a new product.

- *indefinitely (adv): vô hạn định*

34. How many ways is recycling beneficial in?
35. What is the result of the study conducted by the Technical University of Denmark?
36. Which material (mentioned in the text) can be recycled indefinitely?
37. Can we save energy when we recycle aluminium?
38. What percent of the energy can we save when we recycle paper?

VII. Use the following sets of words and phrases to write sentences.

- 39. My passport/ stamp/ when/ I/ arrive/ the airport/ yesterday
- 40. Students/ have/ wear/ uniforms/, they?
- 41. These students/ learn/ English/ since/ be/ secondary school
- 42. If/ you/ get up/ earlier/ not be/ late/ work/ every morning

ĐÁP ÁN
TEST 23

I.

1. a 2. d 3. b 4. a 5. c 6. d 7. b 8. d 9. c 10. b

II.

11. satisfaction	13. Pollutants	15. priority
12. destruction	14. unsuccessfully	

III.

16. complaining	18. is being built	20. is always asking
17. to repair	19. never went	

IV.

21. B (whose)	23. D (again)	25. B (are trying)
22. B (because of)	24. C (so)	

V.

26. c 27. d 28. b 29. a 30. d 31. b 32. 33. A

VI.

34. Recycling is beneficial in two ways.
35. Recycling is the most efficient method to get rid of household waste.
36. Aluminum can be recycled indefinitely.
37. Yes, we can.
38. When we recycle paper, we can save 40 percent of the energy.

VII.

39. My passport was stamped when I arrived at the airport yesterday.
40. Students have to wear uniforms, don't they?
41. These students have been learning/ have learned English since they were in secondary school.
42. If you got up earlier, you wouldn't be late for work every morning.

TEST 24

I. Choose the best answer to complete the sentence.

1. She has studied English in this school _____ the year of 2005.
a. in b. by c. for d. since
2. The air is heavily polluted _____ traffic fumes.
a. in b. of c. with d. to
3. Scientists are _____ Mount Tongariro may erupt again.
a. warning b. suggesting c. insisting d. advising
4. We asked Philip to come with us _____ he knew the road.
a. though b. as c. while d. if
5. Nobody knows why she left so suddenly, _____?
a. do they b. don't they c. does she d. didn't she
6. There is still _____ water in the bottle. It's enough for both of us.
a. a few b. few c. a little d. little
7. The examination was not very difficult, but it was _____ long.
a. very much b. so much c. much too d. too much
8. I work in an aircraft factory, and _____.
a. so do my brother b. my brother doesn't, either
c. neither do my brother d. my brother does, too
9. You _____ stay up late before an exam.
a. have to b. should c. shouldn't d. don't have to
10. 'Happy New Year!' ' _____',
a. The same to you! b. I don't hope so.
c. That's all right. d. I'm glad to hear that.

II. Give correct form of the word.

11. They greeted their visitors with formal _____. (polite)
12. I was _____ at the amount of money _____. (surprise - collect)
13. She is never _____ with what she has got. (satisfy)
14. Don't use energy _____. Save it! (waste)
15. Reading for _____ and reading for study are not the same, (please)

III. Give correct form or tense of the verbs

16. I (study) _____ hard until I pass the TOEFL.
17. The city (change) _____ a lot for the last ten years.
18. _____ you (have) _____ your eyes (test) _____ recently?
19. A great deal of property (destroy) _____ by hurricanes each year.
20. If you could live in any country, where _____ you (go) _____?

IV. Choose the underlined word or phrase that needs correcting.

21. I can't go out tonight because I have a lot of homeworks to do.

A

B

C

D

22. The 2004 Indian Ocean Tsunami was one of the worse natural disasters of the
 A B C D
 21st century.
23. A tsunami warning system is currently being installing in the Indian Ocean.
 A B C D
24. If you tell me who's names should be on the list, I'll type them for you.
 A B C D
25. The house which I was born was destroyed in an earthquake ten years ago.
 A B C D

V. Fill in each numbered blank with a word from the box.

narrow	destroyed	destructive	flying	last miles	during	earth's
--------	-----------	-------------	--------	------------	--------	---------

Tornadoes are a (26) _____ and often deadly force of nature. Tornadoes are a spiral of wind, with potential speeds of over 300 (27) _____ per hour, that travel in a skipping motion over the (28) _____ crust. Tornadoes usually only (29) _____ for a couple minutes in any one location. Flying debris or (30) _____ objects often causes injuries (31) _____ a tornado. Tornadoes move in such a (32) _____ path that many times some places are often (33) _____ while other places, only a short distance away, are untouched.

VI. Read the passage carefully, then choose the correct answer.

For years, scientists have tried to discover whether there is life on other planets in our solar system or beyond. They look for signs of what is needed for life on Earth - basics like water and power temperature.

NASA and the European Space Agency seek signs of life on Mars. They have spaceccraft that fly around Mars taking pictures. They also have probes land on the planet. They study soil and rocks and look for living things. Scientists have found evidence there was water on Mars in the past.

Now NASA is planning a new telescope mission. It's called the Terrestrial Planet Finder. It will look for planets like Earth on other solar systems. It will use two big space-based observatories. They are scheduled to launch in 2014 and 2020. Outside of NASA another program is looking for life on other worlds. It is called SETI (Search for Extraterrestrial Intelligence). Most often it uses powerful radio telescopes to detect signs of life. Recently, astronomers began searching for light signals, too.

- observatory (n): đài quan sát - detect (v): phát hiện, tìm ra

34. For years, scientists have been searching for _____.
 a. life outside the planet Earth b. new planets in our solar system
 c. what is needed for life on Earth d. information about the solar system
35. What have scientists found past evidence of on Mars?
 a. life b. oxygen c. water d. carbon dioxide
36. What is one of the Mars probes' tasks?
 a. to listen for sound b. to kill wildlife
 c. to cause explosions d. to take soil samples
37. The word 'terrestrial' means Earth. Therefore, the word 'extraterrestrial' means

- a. next to Earth b. beyond Earth c. on Earth d. under Earth

38. Which of the following statements is untrue, according to the passage?

- a. One of NASA's missions is to search for life outside our home planet.
- b. NASA is currently examining our neighbor planet Mars for signs of life.
- c. The Terrestrial Planet Finder will search for Earth-like planets beyond our solar system.
- d. SETI uses radio telescopes to discover new planets in the universe.

VII. Rewrite the sentences.

39. Despite his good marks, he was unhappy at school.

Although _____

40. We love living here,' they said.

They said that _____

41. I hadn't made a speech before, so I was very nervous.

Because I wasn't used _____

42. The Browns are having a birthday party next week. They are my neighbors.

The Browns, _____

ĐÁP ÁN
TEST 24

I.

1. d 2. c 3. a 4. b 5. a 6. c 7. d 8. d 9. c 10. a

II.

11. politeness	14. wastefully
12. surprised - collected	15. pleasure
13. satisfied	

III.

16. will study	19. is destroyed
17. has changed	20. would ... go
18. Have ... had - tested	

IV.

21. C (homework)	24. B (whose)
22. B (worst)	25. A (where/ in which)
23. D (installed)	

V.

26. destructive	28. earth's	30. flying	32. narrow
27. miles	29. last	31. during	33. destroyed

VI.

34. a 35. c 36. d 37. b 38. d

VII.

39. Although he got good marks, he was unhappy at school.
40. They said that they loved living there.
41. Because I wasn't used to making a speech, I was very nervous.
42. The Browns, who are my neighbors, are having a birthday party next week.

TEST 25

I. Choose the best answer to complete the sentence.

1. Careless driving also accounts _____ the increasing number of traffic accidents.
a. into b. on c. with d. for
2. It was nice _____ you to come and see me.
a. for b. with c. of d. to
3. She can't go out at the moment because she's _____ the baby.
a. looking after b. looking over c. looking at d. looking for
4. The traffic lights were on red _____ she didn't stop.
a. so b. and c. but d. or
5. He suggests _____ at least eight glasses of water a day.
a. us to drink b. us drinking c. we drink d. we will drink
6. The car ran over a dog and a boy _____ were just crossing the street.
a. that b. who c. which d. Ø
7. Many tourists enjoy festivals in Viet Nam _____ they do not understand Vietnamese culture very much.
a. because b. although c. when d. if
8. Because plastic bags are very hard to _____, they will cause pollution.
a. produce b. recycle c. reuse d. dissolve
9. You _____ repair the computer, for it works quite well.
a. mustn't b. can't c. needn't d. mightn't
10. 'What about having some fruit first?' ' _____',
a. Well, will you? b. Ok. Shall we? c. Yes, don't we? d. Sure, why not?

II. Give correct form of the word.

11. The city was hit with a _____ storm surge (**destroy**)
12. He has a very firm _____ in the existence of UFOs (**believe**)
13. The town hall was _____ damaged by fire (**severe**)
14. The earthquake caused _____ damage to the city (**extend**)
15. Best Director _____ at the Oscars this year include Steven Spielberg and David o. Russell (**nominate**)

III. Give correct form or tense of the verb.

16. We (walk) _____ in the park when the earthquake (begin) _____.
17. Mother's Day (celebrate) _____ on the second Sunday in May.
18. It's important (change) _____ the oil in your car frequently.
19. I have difficulty (remember) _____ faces.
20. She would be perfectly happy if she (have) _____ a car.

IV. Choose the underlined word or phrase that needs correcting.

21. The more careful you drive, the fewer accidents you will have.

A

B

C

D

22. I wish that Jane would able to attend my birthday party.

A B C D

23. Many exam candidates lose marks though they do not read the questions

A B C properly.

D

24. A story writing by a young girl won the competition.

A B C D

25. Some people say that using cars is not as convenient than using motorbikes.

A B C D

V. Choose the one option that best completes the passage.

Astronomers and other scientists (26) _____ research and explore space. One of the most intriguing questions they hope to answer one day is (27) _____ life exists on other planets. Despite a lot of research in outer space, scientists have not (28) _____ been able to find evidence of life forms on any other planet other than Earth. Earth is very hospitable, which makes living here easy. Earth has water, which living (29) _____ need to survive. Earth also has an atmosphere that is (30) _____ too hot, nor too cold. Its distance from the sun provides Earth's inhabitants (31) _____ the proper amount of warmth, sunlight and energy. Although there may be other (32) _____ that have some of Earth's hospitable features, so far scientists have not found any with all of the features they believe necessary to (33) _____ life. Earth remains one of a kind!

- | | | | |
|------------------|--------------|---------------|---------------|
| 26. a. hardly | b. mostly | c. eventually | d. constantly |
| 27. a. if | b. whether | c. when | d. while |
| 28. a. yet | b. already | c. never | d. even |
| 29. a. creations | b. creatives | c. creators | d. creatures |
| 30. a. either | b. neither | c. both | d. all |
| 31. a. for | b. by | c. with | d. from |
| 32. a. spaces | b. objects | c. planets | d. satellites |
| 33. a. sustain | b. save | c. cost | d. change |

VI. Read the passage carefully, then decide whether the following statements are true (T) or false (F)

Japan was hit by a 9.0 magnitude earthquake on March 11, 2011, that triggered a deadly 23-foot tsunami in the country's north. The giant waves deluged cities and rural areas alike, sweeping away cars, homes, buildings, a train, and boats, leaving a path of death and devastation in its wake.

With an underwater depth of 29 km, this was the largest earthquake to ever strike Japan in recorded history. Documented as the 4th most powerful earthquake in the world, it was responsible for the death of 15,894 people with 6,152 injured and 2,562 people missing. It also affected 20 prefectures, with over 127,000 buildings completely destroyed and over 272,000 buildings "half collapsed". The earthquake also caused a near nuclear disaster when there was a partial meltdown in 3 reactors of the Fukushima Daiichi nuclear power plant, which is the 2nd largest nuclear disaster after Chernobyl.

34. A 9.0 magnitude quake hit Japan in March 11, 2011.

35. The earthquake generated a powerful tsunami.
36. It was the largest earthquake in the world.
37. It caused widespread loss of life and severe damage.
38. The Fukushima Daiichi nuclear power plant was completely destroyed by the quake.

VII. Rewrite the sentences.

39. The book was so boring that I didn't finish it.

It was _____

40. 'Please don't drive so fast!' Ann said to John.

Ann begged _____

41. My parents live so far away.

I wish _____

42. Because of her bad behavior, everybody hates her.

Because she _____

ĐÁP ÁN
TEST 25

I.

1. d 2. c 3. a 4. c 5. c 6. a 7. b 8. d 9. c 10. d

II.

11. destructive

14. extensive

12. belief

15. nominees

13. severely

III.

16. were walking – began

19. remembering

17. is celebrated

20. had

18. to change

IV.

21. A (more carefully)

24. B (written)

22. B (would be able)

25. C (as)

23. B (because)

V.

26. d 27. b 28. a 29. d 30. b 31. c 32. c 33. a

VI.

34. T 35. T 36. F 37. T 38. F

VII.

39. It was such a boring book that I didn't finish it.

40. Ann begged John not to drive so fast.

41. I wish my parents didn't live so far away.

42. Because she behaves badly, everybody hates her.

FIRST SEMESTER EXAM

I. Choose the word or phrase that best fits the space in each sentence.

1. Sailors from Genoa wore clothes made _____ jeans.
a. of b. in c. by d. from
2. The new camera didn't work, so he took it _____ to the shop.
a. back b. out c. away d. down
3. "_____ live in a dormitory on campus?" "That sounds a good idea."
a. What about b. Let's c. Why not d. We should
4. What's wrong? You look _____.
a. beautiful b. terrible c. well d. happy
5. You never do your homework, _____?
a. do you b. don't you c. will you d. won't you
6. _____ the Internet, we can easily access nearly all the information.
a. Because b. Despite c. Though d. Thanks to
7. He has _____ friends, so sometimes he feels lonely.
a. many b. some c. few d. little
8. I lost _____ with all my school friends after we moved.
a. touch b. sight c. mind d. way
9. _____ will they be back? 'In two days, I think.'
a. How often b. How fast c. How far d. How soon
10. 'Can you go fishing with US this weekend?'
'_____. I have a lot of work to do.'
a. I'd love to b. I agree c. I'm afraid not d. Good idea

II. Use the correct form of the word given in each sentence.

11. I've left messages, but there's been no _____. (respond)
12. If we don't _____ on electricity, there will be power cut. (economy)
13. The child's _____ was unacceptable (behave)
14. The Internet is becoming a _____ tool for teachers (use)
15. He doesn't have a mobile phone, so it's _____ for him to contact his friends (convenience)

III. Use the correct tense or form of the verb given in each sentence.

16. We (save) _____ thousands of trees if we (not waste) _____ so much paper.
17. It's four years since we (begin) _____ learning English.
18. Both Jimmy and Jeanny (invite) _____ to the party last night.
19. Suddenly everybody stopped (talk) _____. There was silence.
20. Students are encouraged (think) _____ creatively.

IV. Choose the underlined word or phrase that needs correcting.

21. They asked me what did happen last night, but I was unable to tell them.

A

B

C

D

22. Mrs Jenny gave us some advices on how to learn English well.

V. Choose the word that best fits the blank space in the following passage.

Reading is an important part of learning English. This is something you can learn on your own quite (23) _____, outside of the classroom or even around other people. Keep a dictionary with you so that you can look up (24) _____ words. Then, you can write these words down in a notebook and use them in a conversation so that when you try to use them again, they will come to you (25) _____ more easily. Newspapers, magazines and books all help you learn English well.

When you first begin to read English, don't try to understand every word. (26) _____, simply try to get a general idea of what you are reading. If you don't understand the first time you read something, you can always go (27) _____ later and use your dictionary to look up the words you don't

- | | | | |
|------------------|--------------|--------------|----------------|
| 23. a. effect | b. effectual | c. effective | d. effectively |
| 24. a. long | b. clear | c. familiar | d. unfamiliar |
| 25. a. much | b. very | c. too | d. enough |
| 26. a. Therefore | b. However | c. Instead | d. Moreover |
| 27. a. out | b. back | c. away | d. into |
| 28. a. expect | b. realize | c. inspire | d. know |

VI. the passage. Choose the correct answer and decide if the statements are true (T) or false (F).

I'm sure you have heard of Facebook and Twitter. In fact, there is a good chance that you use them. You might also have heard of LinkedIn and MySpace. These four websites are the most popular social media websites. But what exactly is "social media"?

Social media can be defined as web-based and mobile media that are used for people to interact, connect and communicate with each other. These types of media often involve the creation and sharing of content (writing, pictures, and video) that people make themselves, mostly through the Internet.

In general, there are six different types of social media. The first type involves people getting together to work on a project. Wikipedia is an example of this type of social media. Blogs and micro-blogs (such as Twitter) are another type of social media. There are other websites that allow people to share content such as pictures, articles or videos. YouTube is the most well-known website of this type. Another type of social media are social networking sites. These sites allow people to stay in touch with friends, make new ones and join communities. Facebook is an example of this type of social media site.

Many people like to play games on the Internet and, yes, there are social media games as well. World of Warcraft is a good example. The final type of social media is websites like Second Life, where people can create avatars and use and create objects, as if they were in the real world.

29. What is the text about?

- a. What social media is.
- b. The importance of social media today.
- c. How you can use social media.
- d. How social media can help people improve their lives.

30. What is discussed in the first paragraph?

- a. What is social media?
- b. Four of the most popular social media websites.
- c. The different types of social media
- d. The differences between social media and traditional media.

31. Facebook is an example of what type of social media?

- a. Sharing
- b. Blogs and Micro-blogs
- c. Gaming
- d. Networking

32. YouTube allows users to share and view video content.

33. Magazines are an example of social media.

34. Social media allows people to have fun, share and connect with people.

VII. Rewrite each of the following sentences in another way so that it means almost the same as the sentence printed before it.

35. 'Must I do my homework this afternoon?' Jennifer said.

Jennifer asked me _____

36. Gardening is one of my father's interest.

My father is _____

37. I last saw this film ten years ago.

It's _____

38. No other girls in the group are as clever as Jane is.

Jane is _____

ĐÁP ÁN
FIRST SEMESTER EXAM

I.

1. d 2. a 3. c 4. b 5. a 6. d 7. c 8. a 9. d 10. c

II.

11. response	14. useful
12. economize	15. inconvenient
13. behavior	

III.

16. will save - don't waste	19. talking
17. begant	20. to think
18. were invited	

IV.

21. B (happened)	22. B (advice)
------------------	----------------

V.

23. d 24. d 25. a 26. c 27. b 28. d

VI.

29. a 30. b 31. d 32. T 33. F 34. T

VI.

35. Jennifer asked me if she had to do her homework that afternoon.
36. My father is interested in gardening.
37. It's ten years since I last saw this film.
38. Jane is the cleverest (girl) in the group.

FINAL TEST

I. Choose the best answer to complete the sentence.

1. Typhoon Haiyan tore through the Philippines _____ November 8, 2013
a. in b. on c. by d. since
2. Greg prefers watching football _____ playing it.
a. than b. as c. to d. for
3. It's too dark in here. Let's turn some lights _____.
a. on b. off c. down d. up
4. This is a dangerous task. _____, you must be very careful.
a. However b. Moreover c. Therefore d. Nevertheless
5. The twins look exactly alike. It's hard to _____ one child from another,
a. notice b. distinguish c. realize d. describe
6. The last time I went to Scotland was in May, _____ the weather was beautiful.
a. that b. which c. when d. where
7. I won't do it _____ you agree to help me. I'm not doing it alone.
a. because b. though c. if d. unless
8. A(n) _____ is what someone think will happen.
a. Prediction b. Warning c. Expectation d. Imagination
9. I'm practising speaking English very hard now. By next year, I _____ speak English fluently.
a. will can b. could c. am able to d. will be able to
10. 'Could you do me a favour?' '_____,'
a. I don't want to know about it. b. It depends on what it is.
c. Don't ask me such a question. d. I'm sorry to hear that.

II. Give correct form of the word.

11. I think UFOs are _____. They are just people's imagination (**exist**)
12. This map was _____ for our holiday. We got lost for some time (**use**)
13. We stopped on the mountain pass to admire the _____. (**scene**)
14. There have been many technological _____ designed to save energy (**innovate**)
15. It's impossible to carry out his project because I think it is _____. (**practice**)

III. Give correct form or tense of the verb.

16. If the soil (pollute) _____, plants will not grow well.
17. My English (improve) _____ greatly since I (move) _____ to Australia.
18. Come on Rory, the kids would love (hear) _____ you sing.
19. I clearly remember (read) something about it in the paper.
20. As soon as my father (arrive) _____, we had dinner.

IV. Choose the underlined word or phrase that needs correcting.

21. Found in the 12th century, Oxford University ranks among the world's oldest ones.
A B C D
22. Why are there a shortage of available apartments for rent in this city at present?

A

B

C

D

V. Choose the one option that best completes the passage.

The sun's energy is free and abundant. The radiant energy or (23) _____ that shines on Earth in just one hour could create enough solar power to meet the world's energy (24) _____ for an entire year! Solar power can be used for just about anything. Many homes in the United States get heat and electricity from solar power. Around the world in places (25) _____ South America, Africa and India, people are even using solar power to heat their food in solar cookers! Instead of burning wood or fossil fuels, solar cookers rely on the (26) _____ power to heat food without creating pollution. Not only are they good for the (27) _____, solar cookers are easy to (28) _____ and a fun way to cook foods like baked beans, nachos, muffins and dried fruit.

- | | | | |
|------------------|------------|----------------|-----------------|
| 23. a. sunblock | b. sunburn | c. sunshade | d. sunlight |
| 24. a. request | b. demand | c. offer | d. command |
| 25. a. like | b. as | c. such | d. as if |
| 26. a. wind's | b. sun's | c. water's | d. tidal's |
| 27. a. pollution | b. climate | c. environment | d. neighborhood |
| 28. a. create | b. cause | c. do | d. make |

VI. Read the passage carefully. Choose the correct answer and decide if the statements are true (T) or false (F)

How many planets are there in our galaxy? That's a tricky question to answer. Are there other planets that support life? That's exactly what the Helper mission hopes to discover.

NASA launched the Helper space telescope, designed to find habitable planets, in 2009. So far it has discovered five new Earth-sized planets beyond our solar system. These planets are hotter than the Earth's sun - much too hot for life as we know it. The Helper team predict that they will need at least three years (and possibly longer) to find an Earth-like planet.

The simplest requirement for a planet to have life (carbon-based life like on Earth) is for there to be liquid water (not frozen or gas) so the distance from the planet's sun and therefore temperature are important. There also needs to be the correct amount of air. If a planet is as small as Mars (half the size of Earth) its weak gravity means that it can't hold on to air molecules. If a planet is Neptune sized (four times bigger than Earth) it has very strong gravity and too much air. So size matters too. Will we be sad if we discover we are alone in our galaxy or happy if we find that we share it with other life forms?

29. What is the Helper space telescope looking for?
- | | |
|--------------------------------|--------------------------|
| a. planets in our solar system | b. life on other planets |
| c. new galaxies | c. objects in space |
30. A planet can support life if it has _____.
- | | |
|----------------------|------------------|
| a. carbon and oxygen | b. gas and water |
| c. heat and gravity | d. water and air |
31. How long will the Helper team need to find an Earth-like planet?
- | | |
|--------------------------|--------------------------|
| a. three years | b. about three years |
| c. more than three years | b. less than three years |
32. Helper has found five new Earth-like planets.

33. These planets are not in our solar system.
34. A very small planet will have too much air.

VII. Rewrite the sentences.

35. It's said that he is the richest man in the world.

He _____

36. 'Why don't you help me?' Mary asked Jim.

Mary wanted to know _____

37. The dress was so expensive that I couldn't buy it.

The dress was too _____

38. Let's play table tennis together on Saturday afternoon.

Shall _____

ĐÁP ÁN
FINAL EXAM

I.

1. b 2. c 3. a 4. c 5. b 6. c 7. d 8. a 9. d 10. b

II.

11. non-existent	14. innovations
12. useless	15. impractical
13. scenery	

III.

16. is polluted	19. reading
17. has improved – moved	20. arrived
18. to hear	

IV.

21. A (Founded)	22. A (is there)
-----------------	------------------

V.

23. d 24. b 25. a 26. b 27. c 28. d

VI.

29. b 30. d 31. c 32. F 33. T 34. F

VII.

35. He is said to be the richest man in the world.
36. Mary wanted to know why Jim didn't help her.
37. The dress was too expensive for me to buy.
38. Shall we play table tennis together on Saturday afternoon?

**ĐỀ 1: KÌ THI TUYỂN SINH LỚP 10 TRUNG HỌC PHỔ THÔNG
NĂM HỌC 2016 - 2017, KHÓA NGÀY 11/ 06/ 2016**

Môn thi: TIẾNG ANH

Thời gian làm bài: 60 phút (không kể thời gian giao đề)

I. Choose the word/ phrase (A, B, C or D that best fits the space in each sentence. (2.5 pts)

1. Disneyland _____ its 60th birthday on Saturday 18 July, 2015.
A. celebrated B. congratulated C. complicated D. complimented
2. _____ the 3rd day of the Lunar New Year, pupils often pay their teachers a visit.
A. To B. On C. In D. At
3. Our little son was sleepy when we were walking to the park; _____, we went home early.
A. therefore B. however C. moreover D. although
4. People _____ do not love nature may not love anything else in life.
A. whom B. whose C. which D. who
5. - Speaker 1: "Excuse me. Do you mind if I sit here?" - Speaker 2: " _____"
A. You're right. B. Not at all! Go ahead,
C. Sure, thanks. D. Really? Good!
6. The small bamboo forest _____ the entrance to the village makes it picturesque.
A. at B. in C. on D. to
7. About 70% of the earth's _____ is covered with water.
A. world B. atmosphere C. ocean D. surface
8. The teacher _____ Van if she had ever tried calling a helpline.
A. said B. advised C. asked D. suggested
9. - Speaker 1: " _____"
- Speaker2 : "Sơn Đoòng is a new tourist destination."
A. Let's eat out this evening!
B. We need a holiday, dear!
C. I miss my relatives in Huế!
D. I'd like to cook something special for the trip.
10. I chose to buy the house in District 9 _____ avoid noise and pollution.
A. so that B. in order that C. so as to D. in order not

II. Choose the underlined word or phrase (A, B, C or D) that needs correcting. (0,5 pt)

11. One of the great pleasures of to travel to another country is eating different dishes
A B C D
12. The drought that caused by El Nino weather patterns is hitting Thailand and Cambodia.
A B C D

III. Read the following letter. Decide if the statements from 13 to 16 are True or False, and choose the correct answers (A, B, C or D) for the question 17 and 18.

Dear Daddy,

I am writing this to tell you how much you are missed and loved, especially on such a special day as today. I will always remember that day - my graduation day. You were standing there with tears in your eyes while I was walking towards the stage to get my diploma, a moment in time that would last forever. You are such a devoted father who has always taken very good care of the family and me. I now live independently, Dad, and I've experienced the difficulties of being an adult, and I am going to have my own children with all the burden of being a parent. I understand and love you more. After all, I will always be your little naughty son! Happy Father's Day.

13. This is a letter written by a man to his father.
14. The father cried when his son was on his way to the stage.
15. The letter is sent from a son to his father on the son's graduation day.
16. The writer of this letter has no difficulty living an adult's life.
17. What is the letter mainly about?
 - A. The writer's study at university
 - B. The writer's childhood memory
 - C. The writer's thankfulness to the father
 - D. The writer's marriage life
18. Which of the following can be inferred from the letter?
 - A. The father is quite irresponsible.
 - B. The writer is in disagreement with the father.
 - C. The writer has a lot of experience in work.
 - D. The writer very much respects the father.

IV. Choose the word (A, B, C or D) that best fits the blank space in the following passage. (1,5pts)

Britain will soon ban smoking in cars with children. Britain's government wants (19) _____ the harm cigarette smoke does to children. New laws will cut the chances of children passive smoking. This is when someone breathes in the (20) _____ from other people's cigarettes. Many studies say passive smoking can almost be as (21) _____ as actually smoking a cigarette. The British government says that it has looked at research pointing out that children who sit in smoke-filled cars have (22) _____ problems. It is particularly bad in cars because there is so little space, so the car fills with smoke very quickly. (23) _____ agrees with the new law. Some lawmakers argue that it takes away the freedom for people to smoke in their own car. However, Britain's health minister states that the health of children is more (24) _____ than the freedom to smoke.

- | | | | |
|-----------------|----------------|--------------|-------------|
| 19. A. reduce | B. to reducing | C. to reduce | D. reducing |
| 20. A. gas | B. tobacco | C. smell | D. smoke |
| 21. A. harmful | B. heavy | C. careless | D. tired |
| 22. A. traffic | B. housing | C. health | D. economic |
| 23. A. Everyone | B. No one | | |

- V. Use the correct form of the word given in each sentence (1.0 pt)**

26. That exchange student can speak English and Spanish . **[fluent]**

28. Some styles of jeans in the 1960s were _____ jeans, painted jeans and so on.
[embroider]

30. Despite the benefits of the Internet, the users sometimes suffer risks [variety]

31. considerable progress/ our parents were/ all of us had made/ happy to hear./

VII. Rewrite each of the following sentences in another way so that it means almost the same as the sentence printed before it, (2.0pts)

→ *We wish we*

→ *She said that*

→ If you don't work

→ *Three more new schools will*

ĐÁP ÁN ĐỀ 1

I.

1. A 2. B 3. A 4. D 5. B 6. A 7. D 8. C 9. B 10. C

II.

11. B 12. B

III.

13. True 14. True 15. False 16. False 17. C 18. D

IV.

19. C 20. D 21. A 22. C 23. C 24. A

V.

25. modernize/modernize	28. embroidered
26. fluently	29. dependence
27. occasion	30. various

VI.

31. Our parents were happy to hear all of us had made considerable progress.

32. The Academy of Language offers you a good and friendly environment to practise your English.

VII.

33. We wish we *could try all the special food of the village.*

34. She said that *she wanted to send her son to a university in the UK.*

35. → If you don't work *hard enough*, you won't pass *this entrance examination.*

→ If you don't work *hard enough*, you will fail *this entrance examination.*

36. → Three more new *schools will be opened in the town next autumn* by *The Prime Minister.*

→ Three more new *schools will be opened in the town* by *The Prime Minister next autumn.*

Three more new *schools will be opened by The Prime Minister in the town next autumn.*

ĐỀ 2: KÌ THI TUYỂN SINH LỚP 10 TRUNG HỌC PHỔ THÔNG

NĂM HỌC 2017 - 2018, KHÓA NGÀY 02/ 06/ 2017

Môn thi: TIẾNG ANH

Thời gian làm bài: 60 phút (không kể thời gian giao đề)

I. Choose the word/ phrase (A, B, C or D) that best fits the space in each sentence. (2.5 pts)

1. Are you very busy _____ Monday mornings? - No! I always have time for a cup of coffee

- A. from B. to C. out D. on

2. London is also known _____ “The Square Mile” because its area is almost one square mile.

- A. with B. of C. as D. for

3. She didn't hear the dog barking outside because she _____ headphones.

- A. wore B. was wearing C. wearing D. is wearing

4. That is Maryam, the girl _____ visited Lan and Nga last week.

- A. who B. whom C. whose D. which

5. She felt a little bit cold, _____ she put on her coat.

- A. or B. because C. so D. but

6. My Japanese pen pal, Yoko, speaks English very _____.

- A. best B. excellent C. well D. good

7. I like the new idea of those _____ spoons which can be eaten after use as it is made of good rice.

- A. edible B. inedible C. poisonous D. wooden

8. One plastic bottle recycled saves enough energy to run a 60-watt light _____ for 6 hours.

- A. bulb B. standard C. electricity D. bill

9. **David:** “It's terrible. I don't think I will be able to pass the exam.”

- **Mary:** “_____”

- A. Let's try it.
B. Don't worry. Everything will be all right,
C. Ok. What's that
D. Why not pass it?

10. **Sue:** “You have read that article on the website, haven't you”

Peter: “_____”

- A. Sure, thanks. B. Not at all! Go ahead.
C. Not yet. Why? D. Yes, of course, I will.

II. Choose the underlined word or phrase (A, B, C or D) that needs correcting. (0,5 pt)

11. Don't use so much fossil fuel although there will be nothing left for future generations.

- A B C D

12. Recycling plastics reduce the amount of oil needed for making new plastics.

A B C D

III. Read the following letter. Decide If the statements from 13 to 16 are True or False and choose the correct answer (A, B, C or D) for the questions 17 and 18.

Today almost everyone walking down the street has at least one mobile phone in their pocket. That is because many mobile phones are upgraded every year around the world, and most people are interested in changing their old mobile phone for a new one. There has been an estimated number of 90 million unwanted mobile phones in the UK alone! This mountain weighs around 12,000 tonnes, but only about 5% of it is recycled. What makes us worried most is that mobile phones contain harmful chemicals which are released into the environment when phones begin to degrade and, in addition, large amounts of carbon dioxide are also produced during the manufacture of phones. It seems that the more modern mobile phones become, the worse our environment gets.

13. Mobile phones are modernized every year around the world.

14. Most people are keen on having a newer mobile phone.

15. About half of unwanted mobile phones in the UK are recycled.

16. Old mobile phones do no harm to the environment.

17. What is the passage mainly about?

A. The modernization of mobile phones is necessary.

B. There are more and more mobile phones in the world.

C. The modernization of mobile phones make the environment worse.

D. The manufacture of phones produces carbon dioxide.

18. Which of the following can be inferred from the passage?

A. Modern mobile phones are worse for the environment than the older ones.

B. Mobile phones are getting cheaper and more modern.

C. People in the UK are very concerned to recycle old mobile phones.

D. Used mobile phones can pollute the environment.

IV. Choose the word (A, B, C or B) that best fits the blank space in the following passage. (1,5pts)

In many Western countries, people (19) _____ Halloween on October 31st. The word Halloween (20) _____ from "All Hallows' Eve". It is the night before All Saints' Day, a religious holiday in some parts of the world. On this night, children dress up in special costumes, put (21) _____ masks, and go door to door saying "trick-or-treat" to get candy. Many people decorate their homes with paper ghosts, black cats or witches to give their houses a (22) _____ look. People also decorate their homes with jack-o-lanterns. They carve scary faces on pumpkins, and (23) _____ candles inside the pumpkins. In some places, both children and adults can make (24) _____ of haunted houses. They all seem very excited about the festival.

19. A. celebrate

B. reduce

C. save

D. exchange

20. A. gets

B. goes

C. comes

D. reaches.

21. A. in

B. off

C. out

D. on

22. A. bored

B. relaxed

C. careful

D. scary

ĐÁP ÁN ĐỀ 2

I.

1. D 2. C 3. B 4. A 5. C 6. C 7. A 8. A 9. B 10. C

II.

11. B 12. A

III.

13. True 14. True 15. False 16. False 17. C 18. D

IV.

19. A 20. C 21. D 22. D 23. A 24. B

V.

25. impressed 27. consumption 29. beginners
26. surprisingly 28. careless 30. Enjoyable

VI.

31. Many people around the world have lost their lives and homes because of natural disasters.

32. The survival of the natural world depends on each and every one of US.

VII.

33. → He is not old enough to drive.

→ He is not allowed / able to drive because he is very young.

34. Country life is more peaceful than city life.

35. Going hunting Pokemon on the street is not safe for kids.

36. The boy last visited his grandparents two months ago.

**ĐỀ 3: KÌ THI TUYỂN SINH LỚP 10 TRUNG HỌC PHỔ THÔNG
NĂM HỌC 2018 - 2019, KHÓA NGÀY 02/ 06/ 2018**

Môn thi: TIẾNG ANH

Thời gian làm bài: 60 phút (không kể thời gian giao đề)

I. Choose the word/ phrase (A, B, C or D) that best fits the space in each sentence. (2.5 pts)

1. Are you _____ teaching on Saturday mornings this term?
A. enjoy B. likely C. busy D. expected
2. I hope _____ to know this beautiful city better.
A. to have B. to get C. to need D. to appear
3. Jeff completely ignored what I said and _____ on eating.
A. put B. tried C. went D. depended
4. The ones about _____ I have been worried these days are the students of mine.
A. that B. whom C. whose D. which
5. I suggest that we should _____ people from catching fish by using electricity.
A. let B. relate C. prohibit D. encourage
6. Mr. Loc, who teaches Maths here, speaks very _____ English.
A. best B. good C. well D. fluently
7. Watching TV all day is a bad habit _____ we get no exercise and eat unhealthy snacks.
A. but B. though C. because D. therefore
8. A recycled plastic bottle saves enough _____ to run a 60-watt light bulb for 6 hours.
A. energy B. money C. electron D. life
9. - **Hai Anh:** “ _____ ”
- **Minh Phuong:** “Why not?”
A. You should cook the meal now. B. How about cooking the meal now?
C. Have you cooked the meal? D. We’d better be cooking the meal
10. - **Sue:** “Thank you very much for your donation.”
- **Peter:** “ _____ ”
A. Yes, do it now. B. Sure, I’ll do it.
C. Not a chance. D. It’s my pleasure.

II. Look at the signs. Choose the best answer (A, B, C or D) for each sign. (0,5 pt)



11. What does the sign say?
A. You can drive as fast as you can.
B. Beware of careless drivers.
C. Slippery road is ahead.
D. You cannot drive a car on this road.

- A. Littering is permitted here.
B. We must not use recycle bins.



12. What does the sign say?
A. Littering is permitted here.
B. We must not use recycle bins.

- C. We must put waste paper into the bin.
- D. Dust bins can be found everywhere.

III. Read the following passage. Decide If the statements from 13 to 16 are True or False, and choose the correct answers (A, B, C or D) for the questions 17 and 18. (1,5 pt)

We can develop alternative sources of energy, and unless we try we'll never succeed. Instead of burning fossil fuels we should be concentrating on more economical uses of electricity, because electricity can be produced from any sources of energy. If we didn't waste so much energy, our resources would last longer. We can save more energy by conservation than we can produce for the same money. Unless we do research on solar energy, wind power, tidal power, hydroelectric plants ... our fossil fuels will run out and we'll all freeze or starve to death. Several countries are spending much more time and money on research because the energy from the sun, the waves, and the winds last forever. We won't really survive unless we start working on cleaner and safer sources of energy.

- 13. Fossil fuels are renewable sources of energy.
- 14. Electricity can be produced from the sea.
- 15. The energy from the sun, the waves and the winds will never be used up.
- 16. We really need to worry about cleaner and safer sources of energy.
- 17. What is the passage mainly about?
 - A. We are facing huge lack of energy.
 - B. Electricity is the main energy we use.
 - C. Alternative sources of energy must be developed.
 - D. It is impossible to have safer sources of energy.
- 18. Which source of energy cannot last forever?
 - A. coal
 - B. wind
 - C. water
 - D. waves

IV. Choose the word (A, B, C or D) that best fits the blank space in the following passage. (1,5pts)

Two British policemen were (19) _____ to investigate a flying saucer on March 31, 1989, the day before April Fool's Day. When the policemen arrived at a field in Surrey, they saw a small figure wearing a silver space (20) _____ walking out of a spacecraft. Immediately the police ran off in the opposite direction. Reports revealed that the alien was in fact a small person, and the flying saucer was a hot air balloon that had been specially built to look (21) _____ a UFO by Richard Branson, the 36-year-old chairman of Virgin Records.

Branson had planned to (22) _____ the balloon in London's Hyde Park on April 1. However, a wind change had brought him down in a Surrey field. The police received a lot of phone calls from terrified motorists as the balloon drifted over the motorway. One lady was so (23) _____ by the incident that she was crying as she was (24) _____ the UFO to a radio station.

- 19. A. run
- 20. A. suit
- 21. A. like
- 22. A. fly
- 23. A. pleasing
- B. sent
- B. cloth
- B. as
- B. land
- B. terrific
- C. spent
- C. denim
- C. for
- C. erupt
- C. shocked
- D. come
- D. linen
- D. after
- D. collapse
- D. amazed

24. A. telling B. saying C. phoning D. describing

V. Use the correct form of the word given in each sentence. (1.5 pt)

25. Have you read the _____ of our school closing ceremony? (announce)
26. In the 18th century jean cloth was made _____ from cotton (complete)
27. The next stage in the development of television is _____ TV. (active)
28. Some _____ have raised people's awareness of rhinos' protection (conservation)
29. Sweden has a(n) _____ solar energy program (advance)
30. We all enjoy listening to his _____ stories (humor)

VI. Rearrange the groups of words in a correct order to make complete sentences (0.5pt)

31. that family members/ a celebration/ Tet is so important/ try to come back home/ living apart./

Tet is so important _____

32. and developing nations/ the rivers and seas/ for polluting/ Both developed/ are responsible./

Both developed _____

VII. Rewrite each of the following sentences in another way so that it means almost the same as the sentence printed before it. (2.0pts)

33. We are eager to make a trip to the countryside this July.

→ *We are looking* _____

34. It's two months since we last saw a movie.

→ *We haven't* _____

35. Minh does not speak English as well as Lan.

→ *Minh wishes he* _____

36. Stop using the computer after 10 P.M.

→ *You must shut* _____

ĐÁP ÁN ĐỀ 3

I.

1. c 2. B 3. c 4. B 5. c 6. B 7. C 8. A 9. B 10. D

II.

11. c 12. c

III.

13. F 14. T 15. T 16. T 17. C 18. A

IV.

19. B 20. A 21. A 22. B 23. C 24. D

V.

25. announcement

26. completely

27. interactive

28. conservationists

29. advanced

30. humorous

VI.

31. Tet is so important a celebration that family members living apart try to come back home.

32. Both developed and developing nations are responsible for polluting the rivers and seas.

VII.

33. We are looking forward to making a trip to the countryside this July.

34. We haven't seen a movie for two months.

35. Minh wishes he could speak English as well as Lan.

36. You must shut down the computer after 10 P.M.

HẾT